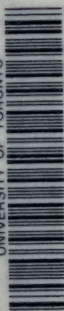


UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO



3 1761 00581782 0

UD

234

A57

1926

v.1

c.1

ROBARTS



Presented to the
LIBRARY *of the*
UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO
by
ESTATE OF THE LATE
PROFESSOR J.R.
COCKBURN

COLGATE'S SHAVING STICK

makes the morning route-march
round the chin a "one-step."

*In nickel container
with Handy Grip*

1/3

everywhere

*Shaving Stick in
Aluminium Container
(can be used as
refill for Handy Grip)*

1/-

*Send your name and
address, and 2d. in
stamps for packing
and postage, for gen-
erous trial sample of
Colgate's Shaving Stick*

*Colgate & Co. (Dept. 97),
46 Holborn Viaduct, E.C.*



B. NICOLL & Co.,

Shirt Makers & Hosiers,

67, JERMYN STREET,

ST. JAMES'S,

LONDON, S.W.1.

Speciality: Shirts made to measure.

ESTABLISHED 1840.



By Appointment.

ASHTON AND MITCHELL'S



By Appointment.

ROYAL AGENCY,

33, OLD BOND STREET, W.1.

The Leading West-End Booking Office for—

**Theatre Tickets. Railway & Steamship Tickets.
Bands & Entertainments. Motor Car Hire Service.**

Telephones—Theatre Dept.: Gerrard 7980.
Telegrams—"Drama, Piccy."

Travel Bureau: Mayfair 4042.

THOMAS & SONS,

*Sporting and Military Tailors, and
- - Breeches Makers - -*

32, Brook Street, London, W.1.

Telephone :
Mayfair 2152.

Telegraphic Address :
"Sportingly, London."

Specialists in Breeches, Pantaloons and Overalls

MOSS BROS.

Civil, Naval & Military Outfitters

Service & Mess Uniforms

Hunting and Riding Kit.

**Dress, Lounge and
Morning Suits.**

For immediate service or to measure.



Cambridge Circus, Shaftesbury Avenue, W.C.2.

'Phone : Regent 1814.

Telegrams : "Alclothes, Westcent, London."

**LIFE, FIRE, THEFT, MOTOR, PERSONAL ACCIDENT,
HORSE, INSURANCES.**

Claim Settlement and Renewals.



G. M. REYNELL & CO.

(Major G. MAITLAND-REYNELL, late R.A.S.C.)

**Military Insurance Brokers,
Carlton House,
Lower Regent Street,
S.W.1.**

Telephone } Gerrard 925.
Telegrams }

Cables { "GREYNELLCO,"
LONDON.

***Life Assurance at Ordinary Rates
and without Medical Examination.***

Major Maitland-Reynell personally advises on Life Assurance, Endowment and Children's Assurances, and having no pecuniary interest in any Insurance Company recommends the most favourable terms obtainable.

Quotations and Advice Free.

THE PICCADILLY

IN THE CENTRE
OF THE WORLD.



PRIVATE BANQUETING ROOMS

accommodating from 6 to 200. Prices
ranging from 7/6 per *couvert* including
:: dancing and admission to the ::

“PICCADILLY REVELS.”



All enquiries to THE MANAGER,
PICCADILLY HOTEL.

Regent 0160.

GLYN, MILLS & Co.

(Established 1753)

Registered with unlimited liability, 1885,

incorporating

CHILD & CO. and HOLT & CO.

(Established before 1600) (Established 1809)



BANKERS

OFFICIAL

ARMY

AGENTS

Head Office: 67, LOMBARD STREET, E.C.3.

Childs Branch - - - 1, FLEET STREET, E.C.4.

Holts Branch - 3 & 4, WHITEHALL PLACE, S.W.1.

Managing Partners:

LORD WOLVERTON.

LAURENCE CURRIE.

LORD HILLINGDON.

General The Hon. SIR H. A. LAWRENCE, G.C.B.

Brigadier-General A. MAXWELL, C.B., C.M.G., D.S.O.

ERIC GORE BROWNE, D.S.O.

FREDERICK WILLIAM FANE.

Current and Deposit Accounts opened on the usual terms.

The Bank has Agents or Correspondents in all the principal cities or towns throughout the World, and can provide Banking facilities for its customers wherever desired.

Letters of Credit and Circular Notes issued on our Foreign Correspondents and Agents throughout the World.

Currency Drafts obtained, **Remittances** mailed, and **Telegraphic Transfers** made to all parts of the World.

Foreign Currency Accounts opened.

The Safe custody of Securities undertaken.

Dividends, Annuities, etc., received; forms authorising their receipt supplied and coupons collected for customers.

Recovery of Income Tax and Preparation of Income and Super-Tax Statements undertaken. The Bank has a special department to advise and assist customers on questions relating to Income and Super tax.

Navy and Prize Agents. Salvage claims preferred.

THE DUTIES OF EXECUTORS AND TRUSTEES UNDERTAKEN.

Full particulars can be obtained on application to:

The Trustee Department,

3 and 4, Whitehall Place, S.W.1.

OFFICIAL COPY

[Issued with Army Orders for July, 1926.]

[Crown Copyright Reserved]



INFANTRY TRAINING

26

Manuals

42

Vol. I

TRAINING

1926

LONDON

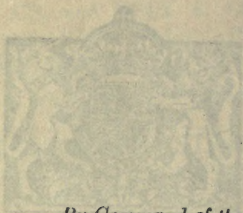
PUBLISHED BY HIS MAJESTY'S STATIONERY OFFICE

To be purchased directly from H.M. STATIONERY OFFICE at the following addresses:
Adastral House, Kingsway, London, W.C. 2; 28, Abingdon Street, London, S.W. 1;
York Street Manchester; 1, St. Andrew's Crescent, Cardiff;
or 120, George Street, Edinburgh;
or through any Bookseller.

1926.

Price 1s. net.

OFFICIAL COPY

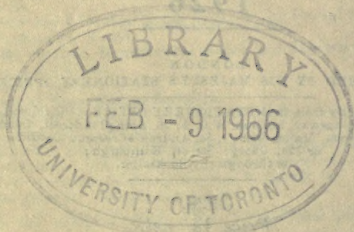


By Command of the Army Council,

H. J. Creedy

THE WAR OFFICE,

5th July, 1926.



VD
234
A57
1926
v.1

1047948

INFANTRY TRAINING, VOL. 1, 1926

26

Manuals

549

Amendments (No. 1)

1. Page iii, Contents.—*Add*—
“9A. The training of the battalion intelligence section....35”
2. Page 2. Definitions.—*Delete* lines 7 to 9 and *substitute*—
“*Column.*—Bodies of troops on parallel and successive alignments whose front ranks are distant from the front ranks of preceding units by a number of paces equivalent to their respective frontages.”
3. Page 14. Section 2, paragraph 4, ix, line 1.—*For* “active operations” *substitute* “operations in which heavy casualties are considered possible”.
4. Page 21. Section 5—
Paragraph 3(a)—
Line 1.—*Delete* “the elements of”.
Line 2.—*For* “and infantry fire tactics” *substitute* “, platoon drill and battle formations”.
- Paragraph 3(c)—
Lines 1 and 2.—*Delete* “recruits and”.
Paragraph 4.—line 4.—*For* “Elementary tactical training” *substitute* “Training in platoon drill and battle formations.”



5. Page 22. Section 5—

Paragraph 4, vii (e).—*Delete and substitute—*

“(e) Up to and including Table ‘A’, Part III.”

Paragraph 4, viii.—*Delete lines 4 to 10 and substitute—*

“(b) Sight-setting, holding, aiming and firing.

(c) Elementary stripping.

(d) Stripping components.

(e) Care and cleaning.

(f) Mechanism—backward and forward action.

(g) Points before, during and after firing.

(h) Table ‘A’, Part IV.”

Paragraph 4, ‘B’, line 1.—*For ‘tactical’ substitute ‘collective’.*

‘B’, ii, line 2.—*For ‘infantry fire tactics’ substitute ‘battle formations’.*

‘B’, iii.—*Delete.*

6. Page 24. Section 5—

Paragraph 11—

Line 1.—*For ‘20’ substitute ‘18’.*

Line 2.—*For ‘should be fit to’ substitute ‘will’.*

Paragraph 12.—*For lines 1 to 4.—Substitute—*

“12. The following is the number of hours which it is suggested should be spent on each subject. The figures are given *as a guide only* and may be varied as circumstances demand :—

Care of arms	..	..	..	..	8
Aiming instruction	..	..	..	..	9
Firing instruction	..	..	..	..	11
Fire discipline	..	..	..	..	4
Miniature range	..	..	..	..	6
30-yards or "open" range	..	..	..	..	15
Theory of musketry	..	..	..	..	3
Visual training	..	..	..	..	4
Judging distance	..	..	..	..	3½
Bayonet training	..	..	..	..	8
Light Automatic, including Table "A", Part IV	..	..	..	..	11
Drill	..	..	..	..	104
Guards and sentries	..	..	..	..	9
Physical training	..	..	..	..	75
Educational training	..	..	..	..	75
Lectures	..	..	..	..	11
Anti-Gas	..	..	..	..	2
Interior economy	..	..	..	..	19½
Standard tests	..	..	..	..	12
Hours					390"

7. Page 25, Section 5—

Paragraph 12—

Line 1.—*For "17" substitute "16";*

Line 7.—*For "two" substitute "one";*

Line 8.—*For "tactical" substitute "collective";*

Line 10.—*For "19" substitute "17".*

Line 12.—*For "20" substitute "18".*

Paragraph 14, line 6.—*For "20" substitute "18".*

... ..
... ..

... ..
... ..

... ..
... ..

... ..
... ..

... ..
... ..

... ..
... ..

... ..
... ..

... ..
... ..

... ..
... ..

... ..
... ..

8. Page 26, Section 5—

Paragraph 15.—*Add—*

“These dummy cartridges will be inspected before every parade to ensure that no ball ammunition is present.”

9. Page 27, Section 5—

Paragraph 18.—*Delete* sub-paragraph ix and *substitute—*

“ix. Understand section and platoon organization, the movements of platoon drill and battle formations.”

10. Page 33, Section 7—

Paragraph 3, line 2.—*Before* “signallers” *insert* “the battalion intelligence section,”.

11. Page 35.—*Insert* new section—

“9A. *The training of the battalion intelligence section*

“1. The personnel of the battalion intelligence section are highly trained soldiers who are allotted special tasks to gain definite information, both as regards the enemy and our own troops, and thus form the first link in the chain of battle intelligence. They will not as a rule be used as patrols ahead of their own unit or given such missions as the occupation of tactical posts.

The preliminary training will be as laid down for scouts (Secs. 148 and 149).

2. Special training will be given in the following subjects—

- i. Use of field glasses.
- ii. Use of compass (prismatic).
- iii. Map reading.
- iv. Visual training.
- v. Judging distance.
- vi. Message writing.
- vii. Camouflage (effects of light and shade, &c.).
- viii. Recognition of aircraft.
- ix. Quick decision.
- x. Night work.

The N.C.O. of the battalion intelligence section will in addition be specially trained in verifying reports, selecting observation posts, &c.

The personnel of the battalion intelligence section must be aware of the various methods of signal communication for reporting items of intelligence.

3. The officer in charge of the battalion intelligence section will be trained :—

- i. To deal with all intelligence reports received at battalion headquarters from forward units and his own section, and to ensure the rapid transmission of intelligence as necessary (especially identifications of enemy units) to brigade headquarters.

- ii. To arrange for constant observation and the supply of early and accurate information to his battalion commander.
- iii. To organize his section so that at least one pair of men will always be ready for special unexpected tasks."

12. Page 46, Section 12.—*Delete* paragraph 2 and *substitute*—

"2. Slovenly drill is harmful; all movements on parade are to be performed smartly. Noisy stamping of the feet in such movements as turning, coming to attention or standing at ease is forbidden."

13. Page 52, Section 16, line 4.—*For* "agle" *substitute* "angle".

14. Page 53, Section 16, line 8.—*After* "Rifle" *insert* "and English light infantry".

15. Page 53, Section 17, line 3.—*For* "Carry" *substitute* "Keeping the legs straight, carry".

16. Page 57, Section 21, line 1.—*After* "Rifle" *insert* "and English light infantry".

17. Page 63, Section 28, paragraph 2, last line.—*Add*—
"Guides should act in a similar manner."

18. Page 70, Section 42, paragraph 1.—*Delete* last two lines and *substitute*—

"squad is turned about at the halt, blank files and guides will stand fast on the caution "About" and turn on the command "Turn", then take two

paces forward and align themselves with the new front rank.”

19. Page 84, Section 50, paragraph 1, line 2.—*For “right leg” substitute “legs”.*
20. Page 93, Section 60.—*Delete paragraph 3 and substitute—*

“3. Inspection of arms from the slope.

For Inspection, Port Arms—One.

Seize the rifle with the right hand at the small of the butt.

Two.

Bring the rifle down to the *port*, meeting the rifle with the left hand close behind the back sight; then proceed as in paragraph 2 above.”

21. Page 110.—*Delete Sections 88 and 89 and substitute—*

“88. To recover from the slope

Recover Arms—One.

Seize the rifle with the right hand at the small of the butt.

Two.

Bring the rifle to a perpendicular position in front of the body, right hand at the small of the butt and in front of the mouth, left hand on butt plate, thumb one inch from heel, fingers round the side of the butt, barrel of the rifle to the front. (Plate XI.)



89. *To slope from the recover*

Slope Arms—One.

Carry the rifle to the left shoulder and seize it as for the *slope*.

Two.

Cut away the right hand to the side."

22. Page 117, Section 92, paragraph 10—

Line 2.—*Before* "bicycle" *insert* "pedal".

Line 5.—*Delete* "a motor bicycle".

23. Page 126, Section 95, paragraph 7, line 2.—*After* "rifle" *insert* "and English light infantry".

24. Page 143, Section 105.—*Delete* paragraph 6, ii and *substitute*—

"ii. **Retire in Column. The Company will Retire. About-Turn.**

Platoon commanders will march their platoons in succession at column distance, giving the command No. . : *Platoon. By the Left. Quick-March.*"

25. Page 157, Section 114, paragraph 3—

Line 2.—*Before* "**Fours**" *insert* "**Column of**".

Line 5.—*Before* "fours" *insert* "Column of".

23. Page 158, Section 114, paragraph 6, line 2.—*For* "**Left (or Right)**" *substitute* "**Right (or Left)**".

27. Page 160, Section 115, paragraph 2, line 2.—*Before* "fours" *insert* "**Column of**".

28. Page 161, Section 115—

Paragraph 3, line 2.—*Before* “fours” *insert* “Column of”.

Paragraph 4, line 3.—*Before* “fours” *insert* “Column of”.

29. Page 224, Section 158, Footnote.—*Add* at end:—

“English light infantry regiments when returning in close column march past at the trail.”

30. Page 226, Section 160, paragraph 1.—*Add*—

“When the unit has been ordered to *Stand at Ease* the colour party will act as laid down in Sec. 17. The officers carrying the colours standing at ease with the remainder but keeping the colours perpendicularly at the right side (i.e. at the *order*) and the left hand at the left side.

When the unit has been ordered to *Stand Easy* the colour party will act as laid down in Sec. 18, the officers still holding the colours at the *order*.”

31. Page 229, Section 165, paragraph iii, line 4.—*For* “officers carrying the colours” *substitute* “colour party”.

32. Page 232, Section 167, March Past by Companies by the Right.—*Delete* from “At” in line 3, to “flank” in line 5.

33. Page 233, Section 168, line 15.—*After* “guides” *insert* “and blank files”.

34. Page 271, Section 202, line 11.—*For* “and” *substitute* “rank”.

35. Page 278, Section 204, paragraph 1.—*Add*—

“The Chaplain-General and the chaplains taking part in the parade ceremony will take post behind the saluting flag a few paces on the right of the staff attending the personage presenting the colours. The Chaplain-General will be in line with the staff, the other chaplains behind him in line, in order of seniority from right to left.”

36. Page 279, Section 204, paragraph 3.—*Delete* line 1 and *substitute*—

“3. When the colours to be consecrated have been uncased as above and the order “*Stand-Easy*” has been given, the personage presenting the colours will move forward to a position in rear of the piled drums, facing the parade. At the same time the Chaplain-General will move to a position in front of the drums facing the personage making the presentation, and will remain in this position during the consecration service. The other chaplains will accompany the Chaplain-General and will take post behind him in line as before. The consecration service will then proceed.

On completion of the consecration service the Chaplain-General and the other chaplains will move to their left front and take post on the right of and facing the drums, where they will remain during the presentation and until the general salute has been given.”

37. Page 279, Section 204.—*Add* new paragraph—

“4A. Whilst the battalion is reforming for the final part of the ceremony, the personage presenting the colours will return to the saluting base, and the chaplains will take up their original position behind the saluting flag where they will remain until the staff has been dismissed.”

38. Page 280, Section 205, last line.—*For* “order arms” *substitute* “remain at the order”.

39. Page 288, Section 206, paragraph 10, **Two**, line 3—*Delete* “, turning the muzzle upwards”.

40. Page 307, Index.—*Add* at end—

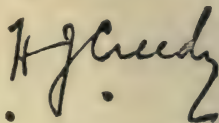
“Intelligence section, battalion, training of . . 35”

41. Plate XIX, Fig. 2.—*For* “1” (the distance in paces section commanders are shown in front of their sections) *substitute* “2”.

42. Plate XXVII.—*Delete* “company commander symbol” shown in front of each company and *substitute* “company second in command symbol”.

1875

By Command of the Army Council



THE WAR OFFICE,
25th February, 1928.

LONDON :

PUBLISHED BY HIS MAJESTY'S STATIONERY OFFICE.

To be purchased directly from H.M. STATIONERY OFFICE at the following addresses :
Adastal House, Kingsway, London, W.C.2 ; 120, George Street, Edinburgh ;
York Street, Manchester ; 1, St. Andrew's Crescent, Cardiff ;
15, Donegall Square West, Belfast ;
or through any Bookseller.

1928

Price 1d. Net.

INFANTRY TRAINING, VOL. I, 1926

CORRIGENDA

1. Page 162, Sec. 115, para. 9, lines 5 and 6.—*Delete* “ and ordered to dress by the right”.
2. Page 253, Sec. 191, para. 5, line 5.—*After* “ all” *insert* “ other”.
3. Page 289, Sec. 206, para. 11, line 16.—*For* “ ten” *substitute* “ the”.
4. Page 292, Appendix, Sec. 1.—

Para. 4 :—

Two ..	Column 2, line 3.— <i>After</i> “ up” <i>insert</i> “ and bring the sword to the position of attention.”
---------------	--

Three ..	Column 2.— <i>Substitute</i> “ Drop the right hand smartly to the side.”
-----------------	--

Para. 5 :—

First column.—*After* **Ease** *insert* “ **One.**”

Insert “ **Two**” *opposite* “ **Then**” in second column.

Second column.—Detail for **Two**.—*substitute* :—

“Place the palm of the left hand on the top of the hilt, the right hand hanging by the side.”

Third column.—Detail for **Two**.—*Delete* “ At the same time”.

Add :—

Three ..	Push the sword to the front to the full extent of the arm.
-----------------	--

ART 5 THE PROHIBITIVE EVIDENCE

ARTICLE 5

The first part of the article is devoted to the prohibition of evidence obtained by means of torture or other cruel, inhuman or degrading treatment or punishment. This prohibition is absolute and applies to all persons, regardless of their status or the circumstances of the case.

The second part of the article deals with the prohibition of evidence obtained by means of threats or coercion. This prohibition is also absolute and applies to all persons, regardless of their status or the circumstances of the case.

The third part of the article is devoted to the prohibition of evidence obtained by means of fraud or other improper means. This prohibition is also absolute and applies to all persons, regardless of their status or the circumstances of the case.

The fourth part of the article deals with the prohibition of evidence obtained by means of other improper means. This prohibition is also absolute and applies to all persons, regardless of their status or the circumstances of the case.

The fifth part of the article is devoted to the prohibition of evidence obtained by means of other improper means. This prohibition is also absolute and applies to all persons, regardless of their status or the circumstances of the case.

CONTENTS

	PAGE
DEFINITIONS	1

PART I

DRILL

CHAPTER I

PRINCIPLES AND SYSTEM OF TRAINING

SEC.

1. General instructions	9
2. Infantry organization	10
3. Principles of training	14
4. Responsibility for training	17
5. Recruit training	20
6. Annual training	28
7. Individual training	30
8. The training of the section and platoon ...	33
9. The training of the company and headquarter wing	34
10. The training of the battalion	35
11. Notes on training	35

CHAPTER II

SQUAD DRILL

12. General instructions for drilling recruits ...	46
13. Words of command	47
14. Inspection	51

SQUAD DRILL WITHOUT ARMS

SEC.	SQUAD DRILL WITH INTERVALS	PAGE
15.	Formation of squads with intervals	51
16.	Attention	52
17.	Standing at ease	53
18.	Standing easy	53
19.	Dressing a squad with intervals	54
20.	Turnings by numbers	54
21.	Length of pace and time in marching	56
22.	The drum and pace stick	57
23.	Position in marching	57
24.	Marching in quick and slow time	58
25.	Changing step <i>1st</i>	60
26.	Marching in double time	61
27.	The side step	62
28.	Turning when on the march	62

SQUAD DRILL IN SINGLE RANK

29.	Formation of squads in single rank	63
30.	Dressing in single rank	64
31.	Numbering a squad	64
32.	Opening and closing a squad	64
33.	Marching in single rank	65
34.	Changing the pace from quick to double time and <i>vice versa</i>	65
35.	The diagonal march	66
36.	Changing direction	66
37.	Marching as in file	67

SQUAD DRILL IN TWO RANKS

SEC.	PAGE
38. Formation of a squad in two ranks	69
39. Dressing <i>babies</i>	69
40. Numbering a squad	69
41. Opening and closing a squad	70
42. Marching in line	70
43. Marching in file	72
44. Forming fours	74
45. Movements in fours	78
46. Drill with the cane or pace stick	80
47. Dismissing with or without arms	82

SQUAD DRILL WITH ARMS

RIFLE EXERCISES

48. General rules	83
49. Falling in with arms at the order	84
50. To stand at ease and stand easy from the order	84
51. The attention from stand at ease	85
52. The slope from the order	85
53. The order from the slope	86
54. The present from the slope	87
55. The slope from the present	87
56. The present from the order (for Rifle regiments only)	88
57. The order from the present (for Rifle regiments only)	88
58. To fix bayonets from the order	89
59. Unfixing bayonets from the order	90
60. Inspection of arms <i>from the order</i>	92

SEC.	PAGE
61. Instructions for inspecting arms	95
62. To examine arms	95
63. To trail arms from the order	96
64. To order arms from the trail	96
65. To trail arms from the slope	97
66. To slope arms from the trail	97
67. The shoulder from the order (for Rifle regiments only)	97
68. The order from the shoulder (for Rifle regiments only)	98
69. The shoulder from the trail (for Rifle regiments only)	98
70. The trail from the shoulder (for Rifle regiments only)	99
71. To change arms when at the slope	99
72. To change arms from the trail	100
73. The short trail <i>to Hades</i>	100
74. Fixing and unfixing bayonets on the march ...	101
75. To secure arms from the slope	101
76. To slope arms from the secure	102
77. To secure arms from the order	102
78. To order arms from the secure	103
79. To secure arms from the trail and <i>vice versa</i> ...	103
80. To change arms from the secure	104
81. To sling arms	105
82. The on-guard from the slope and <i>vice versa</i> ...	105
83. The on-guard from the order and <i>vice versa</i> ...	106
84. To support arms from the shoulder and <i>vice versa</i> • (for Rifle regiments only)	106
85. The high port from the on-guard and <i>vice versa</i> ...	107

SEC.	PAGE
86. To ground arms and take up arms from and to the order	107
87. Piling and unpling arms	108
88. The recover from the slope	110
89. The slope from the recover	110
90. Porting and sloping arms by serjeants on the flanks of the escort to the colour	110

CHAPTER III

SALUTING

91. General instructions	112
92. Saluting without arms <i>USE 125</i>	114
93. Saluting with arms	118

CHAPTER IV

PLATOON DRILL

94. Object of platoon drill	124
95. General rules	124
96. Forming up, inspection, telling off and proving a platoon	128
97. A platoon in line forming a line of sections in fours or file moving in the same direction ...	129
98. A platoon in column of fours forming a line of sections in fours or file moving in the same direction	129
99. Extended order movements	130
100. Formations applicable to movements in the field	133

CHAPTER V

COMPANY DRILL

SEC.		PAGE
101.	Object of company drill	135
102.	General rules	135
103.	A company in close column of platoons falling in with or without the drum	138
104.	A company when halted changing ranks ...	140
105.	Close column movements	140
106.	Column movements	145
107.	Line movements	147
108.	Movements from column of fours	149
109.	Movements in line, or lines, of small columns from any formation	151
110.	Formations applicable to movements in the field	152
111.	Dismissing	153

CHAPTER VI

BATTALION DRILL

112.	Preliminary remarks	154
113.	General rules	155
114.	Movements from and into mass	156
115.	Close column and column movements	160
116.	Line movements	163
117.	Movements from column of fours	165
118.	Movements to and from echelon	166
119.	Formations applicable to movements in the field	168
120.	Drill movements applicable to warfare against an uncivilized enemy	168

CHAPTER VII

FIELD SIGNALS

SEC.	PAGE
121. General remarks	173
122. Signals	173
123. Signals with the rifle	175
124. Control by whistle blasts and bugle calls ...	176

CHAPTER VIII

BATTLE DRILL

125. General considerations	177
126. Control	178
127. Normal method of deploying	179
128. Changing direction to a flank	181
129. Partially changing direction	181
130. Inclining to a flank	182
131. General remarks	182

CHAPTER IX

MARCH DISCIPLINE

132. General instructions	183
133. The battalion on the march	184
134. Horsed and pack transport	186
135. Compliments on the march	187
136. Sanitation on the march	189
137. Distances on the march	190
138. Positions of officers, &c.	190

CHAPTER X

TRAINING IN FIELD OPERATIONS

SEC.	PAGE
139. General instructions	191
140. The training of the leader	191
141. The training of the man	193
142. Tactical exercises	193
143. Instructions for the preparation and execution of schemes	195
144. The later stages of company and battalion training	199
145. Co-operation of the other arms	200
146. Training in methods of advancing under fire, and in the use of ground	200
147. Inter-communication and the training of orderlies	203
148. Reconnaissance, scouts and patrols	204
149. The training of scouts	205
150. Training in the conduct and duties of infantry patrols	208
151. Training in field engineering and in duties in billets, camps and bivouacs	210
152. Training in marching	211
153. Training in night operations	211

PART II

CEREMONIAL

CHAPTER XI

DRILL.—COMPANY AND BATTALION

154. General rules	215
155. The inspection or review parade ground... ..	220
156. General instructions for officers	222

THE COMPANY

SEC.	PAGE
157. Sizing and telling off a company	223
158. A company in line saluting	224
159. A company marching past	224

REVIEWS

160. The colours	226
-------------------------	-----

REVIEW OF A BATTALION

161. Formation	227
162. Receiving the reviewing officer	227
163. Receiving the Sovereign or a Royal Personage ...	227
164. Inspection in line	228
165. Inspection in close column... ..	228
166. A battalion marching past	229
167. Marching past by companies	231
168. Marching past in close column of companies after the march past by companies	233
169. Marching past in column of route... ..	234
170. A battalion advancing in review order	235

CHAPTER XII

DRILL.—BRIGADE AND DIVISION

171. Definitions	236
172. General rules... ..	236
173. A brigade close column wheeling into line of close columns and <i>vice versa</i>	238

SEC.	PAGE
174. A brigade close column deploying into line of close columns and <i>vice versa</i>	238
175. Marching in line of battalions in close column ...	239
176. Deployments	239
177. Marching in line	239
178. A brigade in line advancing in line of close columns	240

REVIEW OF A BRIGADE

179. Formation	240
180. Receiving the reviewing officer in line of close columns	240
181. Inspection of a brigade in line	241
182. A brigade marching past	242
183. A brigade marching past by companies from line of close columns	243
184. A brigade marching past in brigade close column	244
185. A brigade advancing in review order	245

REVIEW OF A DIVISION

186. General rules	245
187. A division marching past	246
188. Review of any larger body of troops than a division	248
189. A larger body of troops than a division marching past	249
190. Royal Review—Order of march	250

CHAPTER XIII

GUARDS, GUARDS OF HONOUR AND LINING
STREETS

SEC.	PAGE
191. General rules	252
192. Relieving, posting or dismissing a guard ...	253
193. Procedure for guards (and piquets) turning out for inspection by an officer	255
194. Relieving and posting sentries, and marching reliefs	256
195. Sentries challenging... ..	258
196. Guards turning out at night	259
197. Guards of Honour	260
198. Infantry lining the streets at Royal processions, &c.	262

CHAPTER XIV

TROOPING AND PRESENTATION OF COLOURS,
FEU-DE-JOIE AND FUNERALS

TROOPING THE COLOUR

199. General rules	264
200. Forming into line to the left	265
201. Position of colour, officers, band and drums ...	265
202. Trooping the colour	267
203. Marching past	275

PRESENTATION OF COLOURS

SEC.	PAGE
204. General rules	278

FIRING A FEU-DE-JOIE

205. General rules	280
---------------------------	-----

FUNERALS

206. Funeral exercises	282
-------------------------------	-----

APPENDIX

SWORD EXERCISES... ..	290
-----------------------	-----

INDEX	296
--------------	-----

LIST OF PLATES

(FOLLOWING PAGE 320.)

PLATE

- I. Key to plates.
- II. { Fig. 1. The diagonal march.
Fig. 2. Changing direction.
Fig. 3. Forming squad.
- III. Formation of fours.
- IV. The order.
- V. The slope.
- VI. The present.
- VII. Fixing bayonets (at "Two"). Rear rank.
- VIII. Unfixing bayonets (at "One").
- IX. The trail.
- X. The secure.
- XI. The recover.
- XII. Saluting to the front.
- XIII. The salute with the rifle at the slope.
- XIV. The slope (sword).
- XV. The carry.
- XVI. Position of recover (front view).
- XVII. The salute—2nd motion (front view).

LIST OF PLATES—*continued*

PLATE

- XXVIII. The salute—2nd motion (side view).
XIX. Platoon drill formations.
XX. Company drill formations.
XXI. A company in column of route (war establishment).
XXII. A battalion in mass (peace establishment).
XXIII. A battalion in column of route (war establishment).
XXIV. A battalion (company, &c.) deploying from column of route.
XXV. A battalion deployed in platoon columns.
XXVI. Ceremonial—A battalion in line. (Peace establishment.)
XXVII. Ceremonial—A battalion in close column of companies, by the left before officers have taken post. (Peace establishment.)
-

INFANTRY TRAINING

DEFINITIONS

Alignment.—Any straight line on which a body of troops is formed or is to form.

Barrage.—A curtain of fire in front of the infantry. A creeping barrage is one that moves gradually in front of the advancing infantry. A box barrage is one which is put down on the flanks and rear of any area of ground in order to isolate it.

Berm.—The distance between the edge of an excavation and the mound formed of the excavated earth in a defence work.

Blank file.—A front rank man without a rear rank man.

Blockhouse.—A small shelter made of concrete, wood, or stones, &c.

Bombardment.—A specially heavy concentration of artillery or mortar fire on defensive positions.

Bound.—A movement from one tactical position to another.

Breastwork.—A defence work of which the greater portion of its height is above ground.

Camouflage.—Any artificial means employed to deceive the enemy's visual or photographic observation from the ground or from the air.

Close column.—A column with distances reduced to suit requirements. If no specific orders are given the distance between units will be five paces.

Column.—Bodies of troops on parallel and successive alignments, at a distance from one another equal to their own frontage, *e.g.*, column of companies or column of platoons.

Column of masses.—See under masses.

Column of route.—A column of fours with not more than four men abreast in any part of the column, including officers and supernumeraries. The normal formation for troops marching on a road.

Consolidation.—Making captured ground secure against attack by organization of the troops and by provision of protection.

Cossack post.—A small party of mounted men (three to six) under a N.C.O. or senior soldier, which supplies its own sentries.

Covering.—The act of a body placing itself directly in rear of another.

Covering fire.—Fire by units and arms to engage the enemy's attention and force him to seek cover in order that other units or arms may advance or retire.

Deploy, to.—To extend a formation or unit into a more open formation, *e.g.*, a brigade deploys from column of route or from mass into formations more suitable for manœuvre or battle: a company column deploys into four platoon columns at wider intervals and distances, &c.

Depth.—The space occupied by a body of troops from front to rear.

Direction, battalion (company, platoon, section, or file) of.—The battalion (company, platoon, section, or file) responsible for keeping the direction in a drill movement or manœuvre.

Distance.—The space between units in column or close column. It is always measured from the heels of the rear rank of one unit to the heels of the front rank of the next. (See also Sec. 137.)

Dress, to.—To take up the alignment correctly.

Drill.—The training of the soldier to execute certain movements as a second nature.

Echelon.—A formation of successive and parallel units facing in the same direction, each on a flank and to the rear of the unit in front of it.

Enfilade fire.—Fire which sweeps the position or body of troops from a flank.

Field of fire.—The area of ground exposed to the effective fire of a given number of men or group of guns.

File.—A front rank man and his rear rank man.

Fire step.—A recess or ledge made or left in the face of a trench so that a man standing on it is enabled to fire over the parapet.

Fire unit.—Any number of men firing by the executive command of one. The section is the normal infantry fire unit.

Flank, directing.—The flank by which units march or dress.

Flank, inner.—That nearer to the directing flank.

Flank, outer.—That opposite to the inner or directing flank.

Flam.—Two strokes on the drum beaten in very quick succession, the second stroke being louder than the first.

A double flam is this repeated with a very slight pause between each flam.

Formation, battalion (company, platoon, section, or file) of.—The battalion (company, platoon, section, or file) on which a change of formation is based.

Forward slope.—The side of a hill or mound which is towards the enemy. Hence the *reverse slope* is that away from the enemy.

Front.—The direction in which troops are facing or moving at any given time.

Frontage.—The extent of ground covered laterally by a body of troops.

Ground scouts.—Men employed to ascertain whether the

ground in the immediate vicinity is passable and to discover the most favourable route for movement in any direction.

Incline.—The movement by which ground is gained to the front and flank simultaneously.

Interval.—The lateral space between units on the same alignment.

Interval, deploying.—The lateral space between units in close column or in column, on the same alignment, the space being equal to the frontage of a unit in line.

Liaison.—Means for ensuring co-operation and keeping touch between units or arms.

Line.—Troops formed on the same alignment.

Mass.—A battalion with its companies in line of close columns of platoons, with five paces interval between companies and five paces distance between platoons.

Mass, open.—A battalion with its companies in line of columns of platoons, with five paces interval between companies.

Masses, column of.—Battalions in mass, one behind another, on parallel and successive alignments; unless otherwise ordered, the distance between battalions will be 10 paces.

Masses, line of.—A line of battalions in mass, with 10 paces interval between the battalions.

Oblique fire.—Fire which is directed diagonally, roughly half-way between front and flank.

Orderly.—A man detailed to carry messages.

Parados.—A bank of earth constructed to give protection against reverse fire and the back blast of high explosive shells, &c.

Parapet.—Earth, &c., banked up in front of a trench above ground level, to afford protection from frontal fire.

Patrol (cavalry and infantry).—A small moving body of men used for reconnoitring, visiting sentries or connecting with other portions of our own troops.

Patrol, fighting.—A patrol used for reconnoitring, to obtain identifications or to harass the enemy. It will usually have to fight and its strength must therefore be sufficient for the task it has to perform.

Patrol, standing.—A small party of men under a N.C.O. posted a considerable distance in advance of other troops to watch either the enemy, a route by which he might advance, or a locality in which he might attempt to concentrate unseen.

Pivot flank.—The flank on which a unit pivots when changing front.

Pivot guide.—A guide on the pivot flank of a unit.

Position, change of.—A movement by which a body of troops takes up a new alignment.

Ranges, rifle and Lewis gun.—Terms applied to :—

Close	...	...	...	...	up to 600 yards
Effective	...	...	...	...	600 to 1000 yards
Long	...	...	...	...	1000 to 2000 yards
Distant	...	...	...	...	2000 to 2800 yards

Rank.—A line of men, side by side.

Reconnaissance.—Examining, exploring and searching the country in order to discover and locate the enemy or to find out the lie of the land.

Report centre.—A position to which reports for a commander are to be sent.

Reverse fire.—Fire directed against the rear of a position.

Revet.—To hold up earth at a steeper slope than its natural slope by artificial means or to strengthen the sides of an excavation by artificial means in order to prevent its falling in.

Section of a trench.—The sectional view of a trench showing breadth, depth and slope of the sides, &c.

Single file.—A column of files.

Squad.—A small body of men formed for drill.

Sump.—A hole dug in the ground to collect surface water with a view of allowing it to soak away.

Supernumeraries.—The N.C.Os., &c., forming the third rank.

Traverse.—A buttress of earth, &c., provided between two adjacent portions of a fire or communication trench for protection against enfilade or oblique small arm fire and to localize the effect of shell bursts, &c.

Wheeling.—A movement by which a body of troops brings forward a flank on a fixed or moving pivot.

INFANTRY TRAINING

Volume I

TRAINING

PART I—DRILL

CHAPTER I

PRINCIPLES AND SYSTEM OF TRAINING

1. *General instructions*

1. The volumes of this manual deal with :—

- i. The training of infantry (Vol. I).
- ii. The leading and employment of infantry in war (Vol. II).

The instructions which they contain and the principles which they lay down are based on the doctrine for the organization, training, and leadership of the army, as set forth in Field Service Regulations, which must be studied by every officer.

2. The aim of training must be to teach the officers and N.C.Os. to apply these principles, and so to imbue each leader with them that, in the heat of action, he will automatically apply them in the right way.

3. The enunciation, by officers responsible for the training of infantry, of principles other than those contained in this manual, and the practice of methods not based on those principles, are forbidden.

2. *Infantry organization*

1. The number of men which can be directly controlled in battle by one commander is strictly limited. The basis of infantry organization is accordingly the section which is the largest group of men which can be personally controlled by its leader throughout the battle. Sections are grouped into platoons, under platoon commanders, platoons into companies, companies into battalions, and battalions into infantry brigades. This system, known as the "chain of command," ensures orderly manœuvre by any number of units in accordance with a single plan, and enables the section commander to assist in giving practical effect to the plans and instructions of the commander-in-chief.

2. The detailed organization of an infantry battalion is as follows* :—

i. A battalion consists of—

Headquarters,
Headquarter wing,
Four companies.

It is commanded by a lieutenant-colonel, with a major as second in command.

* This organization of a battalion is a war organization. The peace organization is that laid down in peace establishments. It varies from war establishment, both in numbers and distribution

- ii. The headquarter wing of a battalion consists of wing headquarters and four groups—

Wing headquarters.—Company serjeant - major, company quarter-master-serjeant, clerks, storeman and orderlies.

No. 1 Group.—Signallers, scouts, and stretcher bearers (these are the bandsmen), batmen to battalion headquarters, anti-aircraft (Lewis) gunners and orderlies.

No. 2 Group.—The personnel of the machine-gun platoon with eight machine guns.

No. 3 Group.—The personnel employed primarily for administrative duties, but available for fighting in emergency.

No. 4 Group.—Regimental transport and necessary personnel.

The headquarter wing is commanded by a major or captain.

- iii. A company consists of—

Headquarters.

Four platoons.

It is commanded by a major or captain, with a captain or subaltern as second in command.

The four companies of a battalion are designated by serial letters or numbers.

- iv. A platoon consists of—

Headquarters,

Two rifle sections,

Two Lewis-gun sections.

It is commanded by a subaltern, with a serjeant (or corporal) as second in command (platoon serjeant).

The platoon is the smallest infantry unit which can be divided into interdependent bodies each capable of fire and manoeuvre. It is thus the unit on which all infantry tactics are based.

Platoons are numbered serially from 1 to 16 in the battalion.

- v. The section is the fire unit of the infantry. Its members must regard themselves as a team and stick to one another and to their leader in peace as in war.

Sections are numbered serially from 1 to 16 in a company. The odd numbers are rifle sections; the even numbers, Lewis-gun sections.

3. The above organization is fixed and definite, and, except as laid down in para. 4 below, must never be varied. Only when a force is uniformly organized can every part of it be relied on by its commander to carry out the same orders in the same way, and to suffer casualties with the least injury to its efficiency. **To maintain the organization, in or out of battle, no matter what the difficulty, is therefore one of the first duties of every commander.**

4. The following rules will be strictly enforced:—

- i. So long as one member of a section remains effective, it will retain its identity. Only if less than three other ranks are available for duty may it be attached temporarily to another section of its platoon. It will resume its independent existence

as soon as it regains a strength of three other ranks, *i.e.*, the strength necessary to enable it to act independently as a rifle or Lewis-gun "fire-unit."

- ii. The transfer of N.C.Os. and men from one section to another except for the purposes of promotion, will be avoided.
- iii. Endeavours must be made to retain the full number of sections in being during training periods, in order that 16 section commanders may be trained in each company. **The training of the section commander is more important than the training of the private soldier.**
- iv. Sections will normally be maintained as strong as the strength of the battalion will permit; their numbers will consequently vary. Section commanders must learn to work with varying numbers of men in their sections.
- v. If a platoon falls below an effective strength of a commander (N.C.O.) and two sections (each of three other ranks) it will be attached temporarily to another platoon in the same company, but its identity will be retained and it will resume its separate existence as soon as it regains the necessary strength.
- vi. Platoon commanders are not to be moved from one platoon to another unless the transfer is intended to be permanent, nor is an officer to be brought in temporarily from another platoon to fill the place of an absent platoon commander. Thus a serjeant or corporal will often act as platoon commander.

- vii. An understudy will be nominated and trained for every platoon and section commander.
- viii. Working parties, guards, and other duties will be found by complete units or by portions of a complete unit (companies, platoons, or sections) under their own commanders. Approximate numbers should be asked for when possible and the commanding officer should decide how these are to be found in accordance with the instructions set forth above.

Duty rosters will be kept by complete units, not on alphabetical company rolls.

- ix. During active operations, to assist in reforming a battalion after a battle, a nucleus—minimum 50 other ranks with a proportion of officers—will, when circumstances permit, be left out of the fight. These men must be selected with great care according to their qualifications as instructors, &c., for the work of reconstruction. They will not be available as reinforcements during the battle.

3. Principles of training (Sec. 2, Vol. II)

1. Discipline, by means of which the morale of a force can alone be maintained, is the bedrock of all training.

2. Wars have proved that victory can be won only as the result of skilled leadership and bold offensive action, while experience has shown that the increased decentralization of command necessitated by the power of modern weapons calls for increased initiative on the part of subordinate leaders and increased tactical knowledge on the part of all ranks.

3. The objects of training are:—

- i. To inculcate the power of command in the leaders, who, to be successful, must have character, knowledge, resource, a sympathetic understanding of those under them and the necessary knowledge to give them confidence in their powers of leadership.
- ii. To foster the individual soldier's good fighting qualities, which depend on discipline, *esprit de corps*, confidence in his leader and in his weapons.
- iii. To ensure the successful co-operation of all arms in battle.

4. The pages of this manual are mostly devoted to teaching the leader to lead and the soldier to fight. It must, however, be remembered that the development of morale, which includes fighting spirit and discipline, is the first object to be attained in the training of an Army. Throughout all training, therefore, while skill is being acquired, the necessity for fostering morale must always be borne in mind, so that the two qualities may grow together.

5. An army can exert its full power only when all its parts act in close co-operation. Throughout their training, therefore, all ranks of infantry must be taught to realize the close relationship between their own role and that of the other arms in battle. They must understand the methods employed by cavalry, artillery, engineers, tanks and aircraft to support them ; they

must appreciate the importance of close liaison and intimate mutual co-operation during the preliminary arrangements for a battle and throughout every stage of the action.

To assist in the attainment of this object higher commanders will arrange for the temporary attachment of infantry officers to branches of the Service other than their own and to the R.A.F. Similarly officers of other branches will be temporarily attached to infantry units. In order that these attachments may not lose much of their value, it is essential that the officers should be given some executive command during their attachment.

Higher commanders will create opportunities for training the various arms together by means of combined exercises and operations.

6. It must be the aim of all officers, warrant officers and N.C.Os. to fit themselves to carry out the duties of the rank higher than their own.

7. The principles of training and fighting enunciated in this manual are based upon *videlicet* experience and their value has been proved. But principles on paper apart from their application have little value.

Ground plays an important part in tactics. It is the application of broad tactical principles to a particular area of ground which requires constant practice.

The virtue most to be cultivated in training, as in war, is energy. **To do nothing is to do something definitely wrong.** Energy in training, energy in fighting, pride in his

work, combined with strict discipline, and pride in and sympathy for his men are all qualities necessary for a successful commander.

4. Responsibility for training

1. All commanders, from section commanders upwards, are responsible for the training and efficiency of their commands both in war and peace.

2. Senior officers, while delegating authority for the training of subordinate units are themselves responsible that the training is carried out in accordance with the instructions contained in this manual. They will never forego their duties of guidance and control, and will exercise a continuous supervision over the work of their subordinate commanders. The lower the unit being supervised, or the less experienced its leaders, the closer must be the supervision. In carrying out this duty, officers will act as directors of instruction rather than as instructors. The development of initiative by all subordinate commanders is of vital importance. Anything likely to tend to its suppression must be avoided.

In units larger than a platoon an officer can seldom combine the two roles of commander and instructor at the same time. In tactical exercises with troops, he should delegate either the task of director or that of commander to the next senior officer, provided that the latter has sufficient experience.

3. The battalion commander is responsible for the training of his battalion as a whole. The most important duty is the training of his officers, as it is through them that a battalion commander is able to

make his influence felt. It is on their knowledge and ability to impart it that the efficiency of a battalion almost entirely depends.

The battalion commander should encourage a spirit of self-confidence, and resolution in his subordinates, and should foster their capacity for quick thinking, for readiness of judgment, and for making prompt decisions. He should make them understand that while errors caused by excess of zeal may often be pardoned, those caused by inaction and reluctance to assume responsibility are unpardonable faults in any commander however junior.

One of the chief responsibilities of a battalion commander is to ensure that his subordinate commanders are trained in the art of teaching. The ability to teach is as important an attribute of a company, platoon, or section commander, as the ability to learn. Personal knowledge is of little value unless the officer is able to impart his knowledge to his subordinates.

The battalion commander will see that the numbers and efficiency of the officers, warrant officers, N.C.Os. and men required for special duties are maintained in accordance with the regulations.

4. The company is the principal training unit in the battalion.

The company commander will arrange for the continuous training of his company throughout the year. He is responsible not only that his platoon and section commanders are well trained, but also that there is a capable understudy to take the place of each leader whenever the necessity may arise.

5. As the efficiency of the company depends largely on the efficiency of the platoons which compose it, the responsibilities of a platoon commander are considerable. A good platoon is one which is well-trained and well-led, and in which the various sections use their tactical skill and weapons to the best advantage to support and assist each other in battle.

6. The platoon commander cannot in action command every individual man in his platoon; he must not attempt to do so when training it. He commands his platoon through his section commanders. His chief care must therefore be to instruct his section commanders and to give them ample opportunities to command and train their sections.

7. Since the training of the section rests with its commander, the selection of junior N.C.Os. requires care. The platoon commander must ensure that his best men are noted for promotion. As a first step, he will appoint a promising private second in command of a section and ensure that he has the opportunity of learning and proving his capacity by commanding the section on parade.

8. The most definite responsibility which a platoon commander can and should thrust upon his section commanders is the duty of converting every private in their sections into a skilled man-at-arms. This is the real test of a section commander's capacity. To enable him to succeed he must be given reasonable opportunities of exercising his men under arms. Section commanders must remember that smartness in arms drill is a necessary step in training to arms.

9. The authority possessed by the junior N.C.Os. over the men depends on the help they receive from the platoon commander. Their position is not an easy one. They live

with the men they have to command and are themselves often of recent promotion. The support of the platoon commander will assist them to gain and keep the respect of the men and to appreciate the obligation of their rank. No charge against a N.C.O. will be investigated nor fault found with him in the presence of the men. The men will not address him familiarly but by his rank. It is important for the standing of the N.C.Os. in the platoon that any charge brought by a man against a N.C.O. should be fully examined.

5. *Recruit training*

1. The training of the infantry officer and soldier is divided into :—

- i. Recruit training.
- ii. Annual training.

2. This section deals with the training of regular recruits. As far as the difference in their conditions of service admits, training of recruits for infantry of the Militia, Territorial Army and Supplementary Reserve, &c., will be carried out on similar lines.

3. For the training of regular recruits, the regimental depot is organized as follows :—

- i. A depot headquarters.
- ii. A recruit training company.
- iii. A training cadre.

The depot headquarters consists of all personnel not immediately connected with the training of recruits.

The recruit training company will carry out the individual training of recruits.

The training cadre has three duties :—

- (a) To teach recruits the elements of section and platoon organization and infantry fire tactics.
- (b) To train N.C.Os. in the instruction of recruits, and to ensure that these instructors are kept up to date in the latest and most efficient methods of training.
- (c) To illustrate simple tactical exercises to recruits and N.C.Os. under training, and to Territorial Army and Officers Training Corps units.

4. The course of recruit training is divided up into two parts :—

“ A ”—Individual training.

“ B ”—Elementary tactical training.

“ A ”—Individual training will be carried out in the recruit training company and will include :—

- i. The development of the moral qualities which combine to form a soldierly spirit.
- ii. Lectures on *esprit de corps*, regimental battle honours, &c.
- iii. Instruction in barrack and camp duties, including the laying down of kits, cleanliness, care of feet, smartness, orders and such regulations which immediately affect the soldier.
- iv. Physical training, under qualified instructors, as laid down in the Manual of Physical Training.
- v. Chapters II and III inclusive, Infantry Training, Vol. I.
- vi. Marching and march discipline. Chap. IX, Infantry Training, Vol. I.

vii. Rifle instruction, under the following heads :—

- (a) General description of the rifle and ammunition used.
- (b) Instruction in the care of arms.
- (c) Elementary instruction in the theory of rifle fire.
- (d) Aiming and firing.
- (e) Table “ A ” for rifles.
- (f) Visual training and judging distance.

viii. Light automatic instruction under the following heads :—

- (a) Loading and unloading.
- (b) Holding, aiming and firing.
- (c) Stripping.
- (d) Mechanism.
- (e) Immediate action.
- (f) Care and cleaning.
- (g) Elementary handling.
- (h) Table “ A ” for light automatics.

ix. Bayonet training.

x. Anti-gas training.

xi. Guards and sentries (Secs. 191-196).

xii. Educational training.

“ B ”—Elementary tactical training will be carried out by the training cadre and will include :—

- i. Chapters IV, VII and VIII inclusive, Infantry Training, Vol. I.
- ii. The elements of section and platoon organization and infantry fire tactics.
- iii. Simple section and platoon tactical exercises.

5. Recruits will be formed into squads for instructional purposes.

The normal number of recruits in a squad will be 30, and training will commence on the first Monday after the squad is complete.

Each squad should be given a distinctive name and occupy, where possible, a separate barrack room so long as this does not lead to overcrowding; the "squad" spirit will thus be encouraged both in training and recreation.

6. Squad instructors will be most carefully selected. They must be intelligent, energetic, smart in their bearing, and thoroughly well trained in the art of instruction. It is important that they should be both patient and sympathetic as well as strict disciplinarians. The same squad staff should remain with the squad throughout the period of training and carry out the whole of the instruction, except physical and educational training, which will be taught only by fully-qualified instructors.

7. The meaning of orders, the importance of a clean and smart turn out, the regulations dealing with discipline, the names of their officers, how to recognize the various ranks, details of pay and promotion and other similar matters immediately affecting the soldier should be made the subject of short and interesting lectures and talks during training.

8. Recruits must be given practical instruction in the fitting, cleaning, and care of their clothing, equipment, and boots as soon as these are issued.

9. The object of physical training exercises is to develop the recruit's strength, agility and capacity for work. The

recruit on joining is not in a fit state to undertake his work as a soldier without preparation, and purely military exercises are not sufficient to give him the necessary physical fitness. He will, consequently, be exercised in a special course of physical training conducted on the principles indicated in the Manual of Physical Training.

It must be remembered that the youth of 18 is no longer so plastic as the boy. His physique will be injured rather than improved by too rapid and vigorous attempts to alter the shape and carriage of his body. The principle of progress from easy exercises of short duration to longer and more difficult exercises must always be insisted on. It must also be remembered that the performance of the various exercises is only a means to an end, and that the training is not merely for the sake of the exercises themselves, but for their ultimate effects. The value of active games and sports as adjuncts to physical training cannot be over-estimated.

10. Recruit training should be so arranged as to begin with about 20 hours' work a week, gradually increasing to about 28 hours' work a week. The daily work should be arranged with as much variety as possible. **Every endeavour must be made to avoid monotony, with its consequent loss of interest.**

11. The normal course of recruit training will be 20 weeks, at the end of which period the recruit should be fit to take his place in a platoon of a battalion serving at home.

12. A syllabus for this course of 20 weeks' recruit training has been issued to assist officers charged with such training to frame their programmes. It has been issued as a guide only.

In this syllabus 17 weeks have been allotted to individual training in the training company, at the end of which time the recruit should have completed all individual and physical training, and fired table "A" and, if possible, have obtained his third-class certificate of education, if this can be done without cramming.

The above period will be followed by two weeks' elementary tactical training in the training cadre, when the squad will be organized as a platoon.

Thus 19 weeks are allotted, with one spare week to allow for bad weather and to deal with casualties, in making up the total of 20 weeks' training.

13. Before a squad is posted to the battalion, the depot commander will determine whether the squad and the individuals in it have attained the necessary standard of efficiency (*see* para. 18). A medical officer will also examine the squad as to the physical fitness of its members for the duties of trained soldiers.

14. When a squad has experienced an exceptional amount of inclement weather or sickness, permission may be given by higher authority for the squad to be allotted the necessary extra time at the depot. But the principle that a squad should reach the required standard at the depot after a full 20 weeks' training will not be departed from, except that in cases in which recruits have not attained to the required physical standard, there is no objection to their retention for a short additional period.

15. Equipment will be issued when the squad commences training, but, with the exception of waistbelt, braces and cartridge carriers, which will be used for all musketry parades,

it will not be worn on parade during the early part of training. Instructors will wear waistbelts on all parades, with braces and cartridge carriers on musketry parades.

Dummy cartridges will always be used by both instructors and recruits on all musketry parades.

16. Rifles will be issued when the depot commander directs, but not earlier than the second week.

17. As a general rule the training of regular recruits should be begun and completed at the regimental depot.

If, owing to insufficient accommodation at the depot, recruits have to be sent to their battalions before completing the course of training, a detailed statement on A.F. B 2091, showing where they have arrived in the syllabus, should accompany them, and their instruction should be carried on from that point when they join their battalion. On joining their battalion, such recruits will, for the purposes of administration, be posted to companies as supernumerary to the establishment of platoons, but will not be taken for drill, training, or manœuvres with their companies until dismissed recruit training.

18. The necessary standard of efficiency to be obtained before a regular recruit is dismissed recruit training is as follows :—

- i. Be able to turn out correctly in every “order of dress” and be fit to take his place in the ranks of the platoon in close and extended order drill.
- ii. Have a thorough knowledge of barrack room duties and interior economy generally.
- iii. Be capable of performing the duties of a sentry on guard.

- iv. Carry out an ordinary route march in marching order.
- v. Have completed his recruit gymnastic training.
- vi. Have fired Table "A" and be sufficiently instructed in weapon and visual training to carry out Parts I and II Table "R" on joining his unit.
- vii. Be trained in the adjustment and wearing of the anti-gas respirator.
- viii. Be well grounded in bayonet training.
- ix. Understand the individual movements required of him in attack and defence.

19. As soon as possible after joining his unit, a recruit will be exercised in Parts I and II, Table "R". Until this course is begun he will be given special instruction with the rifle.

20. The educational training of the recruit will be commenced as soon as he joins, and will be continued throughout his service in accordance with the provisions laid down in the Manual of Educational Training.

Since the soldier has eventually to return to civil life he should be given every encouragement to learn some trade, and such facilities as exist for instruction of this kind should be carefully developed.

It should be impressed on recruits that their prospects of civil employment after leaving the Army depend on their conduct in the Army, that preference is given to such as have exemplary or very good characters, and that sobriety is a very important qualification for employment.

6. *Annual training*

1. The annual training of the officer and soldier must be progressive and continuous. With this object the year will be divided into two periods, devoted respectively to :—

- i. Individual training.
- ii. Collective training.

Owing to the varying conditions under which troops are trained in different parts of the Empire, it is undesirable to define exactly how the time available for these two periods of training is to be employed. **Commanders must draw up their own programmes of training, so as to ensure that the required standard of efficiency is reached within the time allotted.**

2. The object of individual training is to prepare the individual officer, warrant officer, N.C.O. or man for the individual duties which he will be required to carry out in war. Particular attention will be paid during this period to the training of junior officers, warrant officers and N.C.Os. with a view to their becoming efficient instructors.

The object of collective training is to render sections, platoons, companies, and the larger units and formations capable of manœuvre and co-operation in battle.

3. The instruction of individuals and units is not to be considered as limited to the periods allotted for individual and collective training. Advantage must be taken of any opportunities which may rise for individual training during the period of collective training, and *vice versa*.

4. The success or failure of each year's collective training will largely depend upon the care and attention devoted to the individual training which precedes it.

5. It is important that leave and furlough should be so arranged that each company will be as complete as possible for a period or periods amounting to at least one month during the individual training season.

6. Collective training should begin with the training of the section, and continue with that of the platoon, company, and larger units in succession.

7. On the thoroughness of platoon training depends the efficiency of the company and battalion. Ample opportunity must therefore be given to platoon commanders to train their platoons.

8. Throughout all stages of training emphasis will be laid on the importance of sanitation. This term implies the practical application of certain well-established laws with regard to the preservation of health and the prevention of disease.

This can be secured only by strict adherence to the laws of sanitation. This subject is fully dealt with in the Manual of Military Hygiene, of which all ranks must have a general knowledge.

All ranks should appreciate the reasons for the various sanitary measures taken, and should realize that disease is generally due to dirt, carelessness, or lack of discipline, and that they are personally responsible for whole-hearted

co-operation in these methods, and that a low percentage of sick in a unit is a sign of its efficiency.

9. The annual training of units of the Militia, Territorial Army and Supplementary Reserve, &c., should be carried out on the same principles as have been laid down for the regular forces.

10. It is not possible for the infantry of the Militia, Territorial Army, and Supplementary Reserve, &c., in the limited time for training at their disposal, to carry out the whole course, but the spirit of the instructions should be observed. Their annual training in camp should be principally devoted to collective training.

7. Individual training

1. Individual training should aim at :—

- i. The tactical training of all leaders from section leaders upwards.
- ii. A high state of proficiency for all ranks in the use of :—
 - (a) The various weapons with which they are armed.
 - (b) The pick and shovel.
 - (c) The anti-gas respirator.
- iii. Physical fitness in all ranks to enable long marches to be undertaken and fatigue endured without loss of efficiency.

2. This training will consist of :—

- i. The training of officers as commanders in war and

trainers in peace ; their instruction in riding and sword drill should also have attention.

- ii. The training of senior N.C.Os. and platoon serjeants to fit them to act as understudies to platoon commanders. The training of junior N.C.Os. and privates likely to become N.C.Os., in the duties of a section commander. This training will include instruction in fire direction and control, use of ground, in handling a section in attack and defence, map reading, reconnaissance, reports, wood and village fighting, outpost work, and the conduct of infantry patrols. This instruction will be carried out in the platoon or company.
- iii. The training of soldiers in their individual duties in the section in war, including close order drill and fire discipline.

Instruction in the handling and carriage of tools and the method of filing on to, and the marking of tasks. (See Sec. 74, Vol. II. 1926, and Manual of Field Works (All Arms), 1925.)

Men should also be taught how to dig and the general principles of the construction of trenches ; also the construction and erection of wire obstacles.

They should also be practised in the handling and launching of assault bridges. (See Chapter IX, B, Vol. II, 1926.)

Lectures should be given during this period with the object of developing a sense of personal honour, duty, patriotism and *esprit de corps*.

- iv. Practice for all ranks in visual training, including

judging distance, indication and recognition of targets and the use of the hand for measuring angles; the improvement of indifferent shots, and practice on the miniature, 30 yards, and classification ranges and semaphore signalling.

v. Physical training. Every man should be exercised in the trained soldier's physical exercises as laid down in the Manual of Physical Training, and also out of doors in running, marching and surmounting obstacles.

vi. Training in the use of the rifle, bayonet, Lewis gun, hand and rifle grenade.

Every man should undergo the tests of elementary training in each of these weapons as laid down in Small Arms Training and a record kept of the results.

vii. Training in the use of the revolver for those armed with this weapon.

viii. Training of all ranks in the use of the respirator and anti-gas measures generally. This training should aim at all ranks, when wearing the respirator, being able to use their various weapons and perform their duties, including marching, both by day and night, without loss of efficiency.

ix. Training in packing and loading of the vehicles in use with the battalion.

x. Training of specialists.

xi. Training at night, to accustom the soldier to moving in the dark.

xii. Should facilities exist and time permit, the following training should also be carried out :—

- (a) Knotting and lashing, and the use of spars.
- (b) Revetment and drainage of trenches.
- (c) Construction of shelters.
- (d) Embarkation, disembarkation, entraining and detraining of animals and vehicles.

3. At the beginning of the period of individual training, signallers, machine-gun detachments, range-takers, and transport drivers will be brought up to establishment and their training will be begun. Extra men will also be trained to replace casualties caused by drafts, transfers to the reserve, turnover in the machine-gun platoon, &c.

8. The training of the section and platoon

1. The company commander will allot such time as he considers desirable at the beginning of his course of company training in field operations (*see* Sec. 9, 1) for the training of his sections and platoons (*see* Chapter X). The training of the section borders so nearly on the training of the individual that it may be possible to complete it during the period allotted to individual training.

2. All N.C.Os. and men of the section or platoon, and those not exempted in Sec. 9, 3, must be present for this training.

3. Platoon commanders will prepare a programme of work to be carried out during the period allotted for section and platoon training.

9. *The training of the company and headquarter wing*

1. During the first months of the collective training period, each company will be struck off all duties for a special course of training in field operations (*see* Chapter X), and for the annual course of weapon training.

2. The training of the headquarter wing will be carried out as follows :—

All groups will be exercised under their own officers and N.C.Os. in the annual course of weapon training as laid down in Small Arms Training and Machine Gun Training.

Further, machine-gun platoons and signallers will be trained in their duties in accordance with the instructions contained in Machine Gun Training and the Signalling Manuals respectively.

All other ranks of the headquarter wing will be trained in the particular duties they will perform in war. This will, in some cases, entail certain personnel carrying out training in these duties with companies.

In addition, those personnel not exempted in para. 3 below will be attached to sections and platoons of companies for field training.

3. Every other officer, N.C.O. and man, with the exception of those mentioned below, will be attached to sections and platoons of companies and undergo field training. For this purpose they will be relieved of their other duties.

The following will be exempted :—Signallers, the machine-gun platoon, full bandsmen, drummers, transport men, battalion scouts and those exempted from the annual course of weapon training.

10. The training of the battalion

1. When all the companies have completed their course of training in field operations, the battalion will be struck off all duties for a course of battalion training.

11. Notes on training

1. **The aim of all training is to produce :—**

i. *In the leaders :—*

The ability to command—developed by actual practice in the command of men. The ability to command includes readiness of judgment, which can be acquired only as the result of sound military knowledge built up by study and practice until it has become an instinct; the capacity for making quick decisions and for giving clear orders, and the will-power to ensure that orders are carried out. It includes also initiative, *i.e.*, the ability to determine when independent action is required, and the necessary self-confidence to take such action promptly and to assume responsibility for it, as well as the power of decentralization, *i.e.*, the ability to execute an order through subordinate commanders without interference with their personal responsibility.

Lastly, it includes tact and knowledge of human nature so that the best may be got out of the men.

ii. *In the men* :—

- (a) The *moral attributes* of a soldier ; including patriotism, loyalty, pride of race and a high sense of honour.
- (b) The *fighting spirit*—resolution to close with the enemy, based on confidence in their own superiority.
- (c) *Discipline*—the ingrained habit of cheerful and unhesitating obedience which controls and directs the fighting spirit. Individually, self-respect and its outward marks, such as cleanliness and a smart bearing ; collectively, “ team work ” under the “ captain of the team.”
- (d) *Esprit de corps*—the pride in his unit which makes a man unwilling to bring discredit on it and ready at need to sacrifice himself for its honour.
- (e) *Physical fitness*—to stand the fatigue and nervous strain of marching and fighting.
- (f) *Skill at arms*—a thorough knowledge by every man of his weapons and their use, and thus absolute reliance upon them to kill the enemy.

These are the qualities which build up a soldier, and they can all be developed by the methods of training described in this manual.

The growth of the moral qualities will be fostered chiefly by environment and it is the duty of all ranks to assist in this object by their conversation and example.

2. The following notes on teaching are primarily for the guidance of **platoon commanders**, but the principles on which they are based should be applied by **commanders of all ranks** at all stages of training.

GUIDING PRINCIPLES

3. To be the successful trainer of a platoon does not necessarily demand deep learning. **A good trainer requires :—**

- i. Sympathy with and knowledge of his men.
- ii. An exact idea beforehand of the result which he is aiming at and how that result is to be achieved.
- iii. Knowledge of his subject sufficient to produce this result.
- iv. Common sense in his methods.
- v. The faculty of encouraging by praise where praise is due, and the absence of sarcasm.

There must be a clear reason in the trainer's mind for every lesson that he teaches. To train without system is waste of time.

4. No method of training will be effective unless it possesses two essentials :—

- i. Simplicity.
- ii. Interest.

The platoon commander will secure *simplicity* by self-restraint. He must set out to teach one lesson only at a time and he must strip his teaching of everything which does not help to drive his lesson home. Unessential details obscure the lesson and confuse the mind of the learner.

The converse of *interest* is monotony. If practice follows day after day the same unvarying lines monotony results. The lesson has lost its meaning ; the learner is bored ; and when the learner is bored the trainer is defeated.

The business of the platoon commander as trainer is to present to the man his daily lessons in an **interesting and varied shape**. They may take the form of a competition or even a game, provided it has the novelty which attracts interest and produces unmistakably the result at which he aims.

5. Novelty will not be produced without effort. The scheme of training for any day demands careful forethought and preparation. Whenever possible, the platoon commander will get his section commanders together, explain his intention to them, and discuss with them his plans and arrangements.

TRAINING PROGRAMMES

6. The battalion commander, and in their turn the company commanders, will frame the outline of the training to be carried out, and on this outline the platoon commander will make his programme. Training programmes are of two kinds—the programme on general lines which a commander issues for the guidance of his immediate subordinates, and the programme in detail which a subordinate renders to his commander. The main value of any programme is for the commander who makes it. It is the written expression of his forethought.

7. The training of the platoon should not be delayed because of the backwardness of one or two men. Such

men must be sent away for special instruction under a N.C.O. to bring them up to the mark, while the remainder of the platoon continues its training progressively.

8. In supervising the work of his section commanders the platoon commander must expect and look for mistakes. It is by pointing out and correcting mistakes that training progresses. Provided encouragement follows correction, criticism of faults due to slackness or neglect should be unsparing, but criticism of shortcomings after an honest attempt must be such as will produce a further and better effort. Good work should always be acknowledged.

9. The two main channels of instruction are by the eye and the ear. The usual tendency is to train too much by the ear and not enough by the eye. The brain retains more readily and firmly what it sees with the eye than what it hears with the ear. A trainer must train therefore more by the eye than by the ear.

Explanation—Instruction by the ear.

Demonstration—Instruction by the eye.

Execution—Testing the results of the instruction and correcting mistakes.

Repetition.—Practice to gain improvement.

For example, the platoon commander wishes to train his platoon in opening from a platoon in fours into a group of sections on a wide front :—

- i. *Reason for the lesson*.—The platoon commander wishes to accustom the platoon to adopt an open formation rapidly and without confusion when the tactical situation requires it.

- ii. *Explanation.*—The platoon commander states what he is about to do, describes the formation and gives the reason for it (smaller target, fewer casualties).
- iii. *Demonstration.*—Taking four men, the platoon commander makes each represent a section and puts them out in the formation he wishes the platoon to adopt. Every man sees him doing it. The men are encouraged to ask questions about any point they do not understand.
- iv. *Execution.*—The platoon carries out the movement. The platoon commander corrects and criticizes.
- v. *Repetition.*—The movement is repeated once or twice with fewer mistakes. It is then left to be repeated on another day.

FIGHTING SPIRIT

10. Training grounds, ranges and other facilities are valuable, but not essential for the training of a platoon. Under active service conditions some drill, march discipline, or platoon formations can be practised on the road outside the billet. On almost any small piece of ground rifle and other training can be carried out. On wet days the platoon commander can improve his platoon in details which require attention by means of indoor lectures. Even in the line, during periods of position warfare, opportunity arises and must be seized for instruction in the duties of a sentry or scout or in the use of the rifle. By seizing every opportunity in this way the platoon commander can ensure that his unit is efficient, though the period allotted to him for training may have been unexpectedly short.

11. The final test of a platoon is its fighting spirit. A battle is won only when the enemy's forces are destroyed, when his troops are killed or captured. The task of every platoon in battle is to kill or capture the enemy confronting it. The final test of a platoon is its fighting spirit and tactical skill, both of which are the outcome of *esprit de corps* and careful training.

The fighting spirit of the platoon is founded on the personality of the platoon commander, on his resolute belief in himself, on discipline and on the confidence which the men show in their leaders and their weapons. The skill-at-arms derived from constant practice in the use of the rifle and bayonet, Lewis gun and grenade, and the physical fitness derived from physical training and games, are essential for the platoon's efficiency and contribute directly to its fighting spirit.

DISCIPLINE

12. The first and quickest method of teaching discipline is close order drill. The soldier begins his drill by being taught the "position of attention," which in itself is the key to the purpose for which drill was invented. It secures the whole attention of the man to his commander by requiring :—

- i. Absolute silence.
- ii. The body rigid and motionless.
- iii. Eager expectation of the word of command, and instant readiness to obey it.

While in the position of attention the platoon places itself at the unlimited disposal of its commander. In drill movements it adds to this the instant, unhesitating, and exact obedience of orders.

Thus close order drill compels the habit of obedience, and stimulates by the combined and orderly movement of the platoon, the man's pride in himself and in his unit. It will not have these results unless smartly carried out. Slovenly drill is worse than useless. It is the quality of the drill and not the length of time spent on it which is important. During the parade the platoon commander must insist on immediate and rigid obedience by the whole platoon to *every* order he gives. He thus learns to dominate their minds.

ESPRIT DE CORPS

13. **Strict and unvarying maintenance of infantry organization in all circumstances is the surest guarantee of esprit de corps.** On and off parade the man should work and play as a member of his section, platoon, or company, and not as an individual. Competitions and football matches between sections or platoons stimulate pride in the unit and loyalty to it. The man will learn to "play for the side" and not for himself, and will realize that the section is of more importance than the individuals who compose it. Within the section and platoon the men must know their commanders and each other. The aim of good organization is to reduce the disturbing effects of change and, consequently, interference with organization is minimized.

Good march discipline reflects *esprit de corps*. A battalion is judged—and judges itself—by conduct on the march and by the bearing and turn-out of detached parties and individuals. Officers and men in a good marching battalion have pride in themselves. In a platoon moving well, the weaker men are unconsciously helped by the stronger men as the swing

of the whole unit carries them forward. A straggler will be made to feel that he has disgraced himself and his regiment.

Esprit de corps guarantees good work from a working party if it is made to realize that working is a form of fighting and equally a test of its soldiery efficiency ; it ensures that the individual man, whether present with or away from his battalion, will bear himself in accordance with its standards.

Pride of regiment will be fostered by short and interesting lectures on the regiment's record in the past generally, and in the Great War in particular, including deeds of special gallantry performed by individual officers and men.

PHYSICAL FITNESS

14. **The fighting spirit, discipline, and esprit de corps of a unit are bound up with its physical fitness.** The keen, disciplined, and efficient fighting man requires a sound mind in a fit body. For this the physical exercise of drill and physical training (*see* Sec. 5, 9) are most valuable for developing quickness of mind and eye, but are not by themselves sufficient. Fitness of body and contentment of mind come more readily in the free atmosphere of games. The platoon commander should organize in the afternoons football, cricket, boxing and cross-country running, especially in competition with other platoons, and take part in them himself. The men will respond whole-heartedly, and will carry the spirit of their games into their work. A platoon which plays football, runs, and boxes, will be qualified to meet and overcome the stress and strain of battle and of long marches.

THE PLATOON COMMANDER

15. **The platoon commander is the guardian of his platoon.** It is his duty and privilege to look after its interests

at all times. He will place his own comfort or convenience after that of his men. On arrival in billets he will see personally that the men are fed and properly billeted for the night, before he attends to his own comfort. The responsibility rests with him for seeing that the arrangements for the supply of rations and water are working efficiently, that the sick are seen by the medical officer, and that he discerns the man who will not report sick when he should. He should know all his men, and the history and personality of each. He should frequently talk to them on general topics and keep them informed of the progress of events. When a man becomes a casualty, the platoon commander should write to his next-of-kin, and see also that his personal property is correctly disposed of.

These are a few of the ways in which the platoon commander can interest himself in his men's welfare and earn a loyalty which the danger and discomfort of war will be powerless to shake.

LEADERSHIP

16. Leadership depends on simple and straightforward human qualities. **A leader, above all, must have the confidence of his men.** He will gain their confidence by commanding their respect—respect for the clearness and simplicity of his orders and the firm way in which he insists that they shall be carried out; for his thorough knowledge of his profession; for his sense of justice; for his common sense; for his keenness, energy and habit of forethought; for his indifference to personal danger and the readiness with which he shares his men's hardships; for his persistent good humour in face of difficulties; and for the obvious pride

he takes in his command. The leader who wins his men's confidence has attained much; he has an instrument at hand capable of high achievement, and the spirit with which he is able to fire it will carry it to success through the hardest fighting. Whatever demands he makes on it will be cheerfully and willingly met. Wherever he goes, his men will follow.

CHAPTER II

SQUAD DRILL

12. *General instructions for drilling recruits*

1. The object of drill is to teach troops by exercise, to obey orders and to do so in the correct way. **For this reason drill is the foundation of discipline and esprit de corps.**

2. Bad, slack drill is positively harmful as it tends to produce effects opposite to that mentioned in the preceding paragraph.

3. The detail of drill movements as given in the following sections is for the information of instructors only. It will not be repeated word for word to the men on parade.

4. When recruits are being taught a particular motion or exercise, the instructor will first form the squad round him and explain what is required in simple language. As soon as he is satisfied that his meaning is clear, he will proceed to the second stage—demonstration—by performing the motion himself. During this stage he will point out details he has already described, and give examples of common faults. The men will then be made to perform the movement themselves, the instructor taking each in turn and correcting faults.

5. Recruits will be taught that when on parade it is the duty of every man to see that he is at all times in the correct dressing from whichever flank is the directing flank. This principle applies both when falling in and during and on the completion of all parade movements, except that in **ceremonial drill** men will not correct their dressing on the completion of a movement until they receive the command *Right (or Left)—Dress.*

6. The instructor will explain the reason and importance of all drill movements and formations to the parade, and their application in the field.

7. Men should be given frequent rests between exercises.

8. With practice, men will be able to stand steady in the ranks for long periods without effort, but, at first, they should not be kept in any position long enough to produce strain or fatigue. When the men of a squad are being tested separately in any movement those not under instruction at the moment should be ordered to stand easy or to continue practising the movement.

9. Recruits will be advanced progressively from one exercise to another, those who show exceptional aptitude being put forward to a more advanced squad and those who do not come up to the average standard being put back to a less advanced squad.

13. *Words of command*

1. Young officers and N.C.Os. will be practised in giving words of command.

This practice gives instructors confidence in themselves and accustoms them to use their voice in the best manner to produce the desired result. Words of command should be pronounced distinctly and loud enough to be heard by all concerned. A word of command to a squad of six men need not be as loud as a command to a battalion. Provided that all concerned can hear, good drill depends more on the manner in which words of command are given than on the power of the instructor's lungs.

2. Commands which consist of one word will be preceded by a caution. The caution, or cautionary part of a word of command, will be given deliberately and distinctly: the last or executive part, which, as a rule, should consist of only one word or syllable, will be given sharply: as **Platoon**, (slowly)—**Halt** (sharply): **Right** (slowly)—**Form** (sharply); A pause will be made between the caution and the executive word of command.

3. The cautions and commands in this manual are, as a rule, given with regard to one flank only, but the same principles apply equally to movements to the other flank, which will also be practised.

4. Words of command must be given at all times with precision by all ranks; indistinct and slovenly words of command produce slovenly movements and must be avoided.

5. Instructors when giving words of command must themselves adopt a correct bearing, and so be an example of alertness to their men.

6. It should be remembered that a word of command is an order which must be smartly and promptly obeyed.

Instructors must observe the result of their commands at drill and check any tendency on the part of the men to carry out a movement in a slovenly manner. For instance, when men are called to attention or are ordered to stand at ease absolute steadiness and silence must be insisted on and talking must be prohibited when men are standing easy. Plenty of time should therefore be taken over the correct performance of one movement before proceeding with the next. If faults and slack habits are passed over in the early stages they will, in time, undermine discipline without which no troops can train or fight.

7. The words of command laid down for use in close order drill are not intended for use in movements in the field. They are designed with a view to training the soldier's mind and body to habits of strict obedience to the will of the leader. In movements in the field words of command will be replaced by short instructions, *e.g., along this track in single file ; open out into section groups over that field, Nos. 1 and 2 sections leading at 150 yards interval. Nos. 3 and 4 following at 100 yards distance ; follow me across this bridge ; get under cover of this bank, &c.*

8. The following table shows when to give words of command to men on the move during close order drill :—

Word of Command	Slow Time	Quick Time
Halt	As the left foot is coming to the ground.	As the right foot is coming to the ground.
About Turn ...	As the right foot is coming to the ground.	As the left foot is coming to the ground.
Right Turn ...	As the left foot is passing and level with the right foot.	As the right foot is coming to the ground.
„ In—cline		
„ Form		
Left Turn ...	As the right is passing and level with the left foot.	As the left foot is coming to the ground.
„ In—cline		
„ Form		
For—ward (when marking time)	When the left foot is on the ground.	When the left foot is coming to the ground.
Form Fours (front rank in front)	When the right foot is passing and level with the left foot.	When the left foot is on the ground.
Form Two-Deep (front rank in front)	Do.	Do.

Word of Command	Slow Time	Quick Time
Form Fours (rear rank in front)	When the left foot is passing and level with the right foot.	When the right foot is on the ground.
Form Two-Deep (rear rank in front)	Do.	Do.
Form Squad or Platoon (right leading)	When the left foot is coming to the ground.	When the right foot is coming to the ground.
Form Squad or Platoon (left leading)	When the right foot is coming to the ground.	When the left foot is coming to the ground.
Break into Quick Time. Quick March	When the right foot is on the ground.	—
Break into Slow Time. Slow March	—	When the left foot is coming to the ground.
Mark Time ...	As the left foot is coming to the ground.	As the right foot is coming to the ground.
For— ward	When the left foot is on the ground.	As the left foot is coming to the ground.
Halt (when marking time)	As the right foot leaves the ground.	As the left foot is coming to the ground.

When drilling a battalion, words of command must be given a little earlier.

9. To move off a unit in step with the preceding unit the command *quick* (or *slow*) should be given as the left feet of the preceding unit are coming to the ground, *march*, as the right feet are coming to the ground.

10. In the detail of squad drill the title of the movement is shown in *italics* and is followed by the cautionary or executive word of command in **thick type**, Cautions and words of command referred to in the detail are printed in *italics*.

14. *Inspection*

1. Whenever a squad, parading in two ranks, is to be inspected the ranks will be opened for the inspection or closed on its completion by the following orders:—

Open order—March. The rear rank will step back two paces and dress by the right.

Close order—March. The rear rank will step forward two paces.

2. The instructor will pay attention to the personal cleanliness of the men as well as to the care of their arms, equipment and clothing. A clean and smart turn-out must be insisted on at all times. In this respect instructors must set a high standard for young soldiers to emulate. Men learn good habits more quickly by example than by other methods.

3. Instructors will be trained in methods of inspection so that, with practice, they will be able to tell at a glance whether each man on parade is correctly turned out or not.

SQUAD DRILL WITHOUT ARMS

SQUAD DRILL WITH INTERVALS

15. *Formation of squads with intervals*

1. A few men will be placed in single rank at arm's length apart; while so formed, they will be termed a squad with intervals.

2. Instruction can best be imparted to a squad in single rank, but, if want of space makes it necessary, the squad may consist of two ranks, in which case the men of the rear rank will cover the intervals between the men in the front rank, so that in marching they may take their own points, as directed in Sec. 23, 4.

3. When recruits have learned to dress as described in Sec. 19, they will be taught to fall in, and to dress and correct their intervals immediately without any further order. After they have been instructed as far as Sec. 28, they may fall in as directed in Sec. 29.

4. Care must be taken that the positions of recruits in the ranks are changed frequently as they must be taught to drill correctly in any position in the squad.

16. *Attention*

Squad—Attention.

Spring up to the following position :—Heels together and in line. Feet turned out at an angle of about 45 degrees. Knees straight. Body erect and carried evenly over the thighs, with the shoulders (which should be level and square to the front) down and moderately back—this should bring the chest to its natural forward position without any straining or stiffening. Arms hanging from the shoulders as straight as the natural bend of the arm will allow. Wrists straight. Hands closed but not clenched. Backs of the fingers touching the thigh lightly, thumb to the front and close to the forefinger, thumb immediately behind the seam of the trousers. Neck erect. Head balanced evenly on the neck and not poked forward, eyes looking their own height and straight to the front.

The weight of the body should be balanced on both feet and evenly distributed between the fore part of the feet and the heels.

The breathing must not in any way be restricted, and no part of the body should be either drawn in or pushed out.

The position is one of readiness in expectation of the word of command.

Note.—Rifle regiments do not use the word *attention*, but come to attention on the command *squad, company, battalion*, or other unit being named.

17. *Standing at ease*

Stand at—Ease.

Carry the left foot about 12 inches to the left so that the weight of the body rests equally on both feet. At the same time carry the hands behind the back and place the back of the right hand in the palm of the left, grasping it lightly with the finger and thumb, and allowing the arms to hang at their full extent.

i. In marching order without the rifle the arms will be retained as in the position of attention.

ii. When a recruit falls in he will stand at ease after he has got his dressing.

18. *Standing easy*

Stand—Easy.

The limbs, head, and body may be moved but the man will not move his feet, so that on coming to attention there will be no loss of dressing. Slouching attitudes are not to be permitted. If either foot is moved men are inclined to lose their dressing.

On the caution *squad, &c.*, the correct position of *stand at ease* will be assumed.

19. *Dressing a squad with intervals*

Right—Dress.

Each recruit, except the right-hand man, will turn his head and eyes to the right and at the same time extend his right arm, back of the hand upwards, finger tips touching the shoulder of the man on his right. He will then take up his dressing in line by moving, with short quick steps, till he is just able to distinguish the lower part of the face of the second man beyond him. Care must be taken to carry the body backward or forward with the feet, the shoulders being kept perfectly square in their original position.

Eyes—Front.

The head and eyes will be turned smartly to the front, the arm cut away to the side and the position of attention resumed.

20. *Turning by numbers*

1. Turning to the Right—One.

Keeping both knees straight and the body erect, turn to the right on the right heel and left toe, raising the left heel and right toe in doing so.

On the completion of this preliminary movement, the right foot must be flat on the ground and the left heel raised; both knees straight, and the weight of the body, which must be erect, on the right foot.

Two.

Bring the left heel smartly up to the right.

2. Turning to the Left—One.

As for above, except for *right* read *left* and *vice versa*.

Two.

Bring the right heel smartly up to the left.

3. Turning About—One.

Keeping both knees straight and the body erect, turn to the right-about on the right heel and left toe, raising the right toe and left heel in doing so, but keeping the right heel firmly on the ground.

On the completion of this preliminary movement the right foot must be flat on the ground and the left heel raised ; both knees straight, and the weight of the body, which must be erect, on the right foot.

Two.

Bring the left heel smartly up to the right.

4. Inclining to the Right—One.

As described for turning to the right, but turning only half-right.

Two.

As described for turning to the right.

5. Inclining to the Left—One.

As described for turning to the left, but turning only half-left.

Two.

As described for turning to the left.

6. Throughout all turns the arms must be kept close to the sides as in the position of attention.

7. In turning "judging the time" commands are *Right* (or *Left*) or *About—Turn*, *Right* (or *Left*) *In—cline*; the movements described above will be carried out on the command *Turn* or *In—cline*, observing the two distinct motions.

21. Length of pace and time in marching

1. *Length of pace.*—In slow and in quick time the length of a pace is 30 inches. In stepping out it is 33 inches, in double time, 40; in stepping short, 21; and in the side pace 12 inches.

When a soldier takes a side pace to clear or cover another, as in forming fours, Sec. 44, the pace will be 24 inches.

2. *Time.*—In *slow time* 70 paces are taken in one minute. In *quick time* 120 paces, equal to 100 yards in a minute, or three miles, 720 yards in an hour, are taken. Except during the first weeks of recruit training, recruits, when not in marching order, will take 130 paces a minute in quick time at drill.

In *double time* 180 paces, equal to 200 yards a minute, are taken. The time of the side pace is the same as for quick time.

Distances of 100 and 200 yards will be marked on the drill ground, and N.C.Os. and men practised in keeping correct time and length of pace.

3. On ceremonial and drill parades Rifle regiments, when not brigaded with other troops, march at the rate of 140 paces a minute.

22. The drum and pace stick

1. Recruits are not to be taught to march without the constant use of the drum and pace stick.

2. Before the squad is put in motion a drummer will beat the time in which the men are to march, the men paying careful attention. The squad will then be marched on, and the drummer will beat the time occasionally while the men are on the move.

3. In order to ascertain whether the time is beaten correctly, a metronome should be used.

4. The length of the pace in marching should be corrected with the pace stick, the accuracy of which should occasionally be tested by measurement.

23. Position in marching

1. In marching, the soldier will maintain the position of the head and body as directed in Sec. 16. He must be well balanced on his limbs. In slow time his arms and hands must be kept steady by his sides. In quick time the arms, which should be as straight as their natural bend will allow, should swing naturally from the shoulder, so that the hands reach the height of the waist belt in front and go as far as possible to the rear. Hands should be kept closed but not clenched.

2. The legs should be swung forward freely and naturally from the hip joints, each leg as it swings forward being bent

sufficiently at the knee to enable the foot to clear the ground. The foot should be carried straight to the front, and, without being drawn back, placed firmly upon the ground with the knee straight, but so as not to jerk the body.

3. Although several recruits may be drilled together in a squad with intervals, they must act independently, precisely as if they were being instructed singly. They will thus learn to march in a straight line, and to take a correct pace, both as regards length and time, without reference to the other men of the squad.

4. Before the squad is put in motion the instructor will take care that each man is square to the front and in correct line with the remainder. The recruit will be taught to take a point straight to his front, by fixing his eyes upon some distant object, and then observing some nearer point in the same straight line, such as a stone, tuft of grass, or other object. The same procedure will be followed by the man on the named flank or by the named number, when marching in other formations (*see* Sec. 33).

24. Marching in quick and slow time

1. The quick march.

The Squad will Advance. Quick—March.

The squad will step off together with the left foot, in quick time, observing the rules in Sec. 23.

2. The slow march.

During recruit training squad drill should be frequently practised in slow time only. The executive word of command

will be *Slow—March*. The men will step off and march as described for *Quick March*, but in slow time, and keeping the arms and hands steady at the sides, thumbs to the front. Each leg will be brought forward in one even motion and will be straightened as it comes to the front with the toes pointed downwards and placed on the ground before the heel.

3. *The halt.*

Squad—Halt.

A pace of 30 inches will be completed with the left foot and the right foot brought up in line with it. At the same time the right hand will be cut smartly to the side.

4. *Stepping out.*

Step—Out.

The moving foot will complete its pace, and the soldier will lengthen the pace by three inches, leaning forward a little, but without altering the time.

This step is used when a slight increase of speed, without an alteration of time, is required; on the command *Quick—March* the normal length of pace will be resumed.

5. *Stepping short.*

Step—Short.

The foot advancing will complete its pace, after which the pace will be shortened by nine inches until the command *Quick—March* is given, when the normal length of pace will be resumed.

6. *Marking time.*

Mark—Time.

The foot then advancing will complete its pace, after which the time will be continued, without advancing, by raising each foot alternately about six inches, keeping the feet almost parallel with the ground, the knees raised to the front, the arms steady at the sides, and the body steady. On the command *For—ward*, the pace at which the men were moving will be resumed.

In slow time the feet should be raised twelve inches when marking time, the ball of the foot being immediately below the point of the knee, toes pointing downwards.

7. *Stepping back from the halt.*

...Paces. Step back—March.

Step back the named number of paces of 30 inches straight to the rear, commencing with the left foot, keeping the arms still by the sides.

Stepping back should not exceed four paces.

25. *Changing step*

1. *When on the march.*

Change—Step.

The advancing foot will complete its pace, and the ball of the rear foot will be brought up to the heel of the advanced one, which will make another step forward, so that the time will not be lost, two successive steps being taken with the same foot.

2. *When marking time.*

Change—Step.

Make two successive beats with the same foot.

26. *Marching in double time*

1. *The double march.*

The Squad will Advance. Double—March.

Step off with the left foot and double on the toes with easy swinging strides, inclining the body slightly forward, but maintaining its correct carriage. The feet must be picked up cleanly from the ground, at each pace, and the thigh, knee, and ankle joints must all work freely and without stiffness. The whole body should be carried forward by a thrust from the rear foot without unnecessary effort. The heels must not be raised towards the seat, but the foot carried straight to the front and the toes placed lightly on the ground. The arms should swing easily from the shoulders and should be bent at the elbow, the forearm forming an angle of about 135 degrees with the upper arm (*i.e.*, midway between a straight arm and a right angle at the elbow), fists slightly clenched, backs of the hands outwards, and the arms swung sufficiently clear of the body to allow of full freedom for the chest. The shoulders should be kept steady and square to the front and the head erect.

2. *The halt.*

Squad—Halt.

As in Sec. 24, 3, at the same time cutting away the hands to the position of attention.

3. *Marking time.*

Mark—Time.

Act as in Sec. 24, 6, the arms and hands being carried as when marching in double time, but without swinging the arms.

27. *The side step*

1. *Closing to the right (or left).*

Right (or Left) Close—March, orPaces Right (or Left) Close—March.

Each man will carry his right foot 12 inches direct to the right, and instantly close his left foot to it, thus completing the pace; he will proceed to take the next pace in the same manner. Shoulders to be kept square, unless on rough or broken ground. The direction must be kept in a straight line to the flank.

2. *The halt.*

Squad—Halt.

On the command *Halt*, which will be given when the number of paces has not been specified, the men will complete the pace they are taking, and remain steady.

3. Soldiers should not usually be moved to a flank by the side step more than 12 paces.

28. *Turning when on the march*

1. **Right (or Left)—Turn.**

On the command *Right (or Left)—Turn* the *left (or right)* foot will be brought forward until it is just in front of the

right (or *left*) foot and each man will then turn smartly in the required direction using his *left* (or *right*) foot as a pivot, and advance a full pace of 30 inches in the new direction with the *right* (or *left*) foot.

The turn to the right must be made off the left foot and to the left off the right foot.

2. About—Turn.

Complete the pace with the right foot, then commence the turn with the left foot, the turn being completed in three beats of the time in which the soldier is marching. Having completed the turn about, the soldier will at once move forward, the fourth pace being a full one and taken with the right foot.

In the case of a squad with a blank file, marching in line, the blank file will mark time two paces on the word *about* thus gaining his position in the new front rank before the turn is completed.

3. Right (or Left) In—cline.

On the command *In—cline*, as in para. 1. but make a half turn in the required direction.

4. Turnings and changes on the march should always be preceded by a cautionary word of command, *e.g.*, *The squad will move to the right—The squad will advance—Break into slow time—Diagonal march, &c.*

SQUAD DRILL IN SINGLE RANK

29. Formation of squads in single rank

Recruits will at this stage be formed in single rank without intervals, each man occupying a lateral space of 24 inches.

Thus ten men occupy eight paces. The accuracy of the space should be frequently tested. Squads will fall in and dress by the right unless otherwise ordered.

30. *Dressing in single rank*

Right (or Left)—Dress.

1. Each man, except the man on the named flank, will look towards the flank by which he is to dress with a smart turn of the head, and, commencing with the man nearest the flank by which the dressing is made will move up or back to his place successively. When the squad is correctly dressed the instructor will give the command *Eyes—Front*.

2. The above method will be taught for use on ceremonial parades only. On all other occasions each man will take up his dressing from the directing flank without any word of command, each man in succession turning his head and eyes to the front when in the correct alignment.

31. *Numbering a squad*

Squad—Number.

The squad will number off from the right, the right-hand man calling out *One*, the next on his left *Two*, and so on. Each man as he calls out his number will keep his head steady and continue to look straight to his front.

32. *Opening and closing a squad*

1. Open Ranks—March.

The odd numbers will take two paces forward ; when the paces are completed the squad may be dressed as in Sec. 30.

2. Reform Ranks—March.

The odd numbers will step back two paces ; when the paces are completed the squad will dress as in Sec. 30, 2.

33. *Marching in single rank*

1. *To advance in quick time.*

The Squad will Advance. By the Right (*or Left or By No.*), Quick—March.

As in Sec. 24, 1. Each man will preserve his position in the general line by an occasional glance towards the directing man who will act as in Sec. 23, 4.

2. *To advance in double time.*

The Squad will Advance. By the Right (*or Left or By No.*), Double—March.

As in para. 1 above, but in double time.

34. *Changing the pace from quick to double time, and vice versa*

1. *From quick time to double time.*

Break into double time. Double—March.

Complete the next pace in quick time and then continue in double time as in Sec. 26.

2. *From double time to quick time.*

Break into quick time. Quick—March.

Complete the next pace in double time and then break into quick time, dropping the arms to their usual position.

35. The diagonal march (Plate II, Fig. 1)**1. The right diagonal march.****Diagonal march. Right In—cline.**

Each man will make a half turn in the required direction, and, if on the march, will move diagonally in that direction, as in Sec. 28.

2. Should the squad be required to move in the original direction the command will be—*The squad will advance. Left In—cline.*

36. Changing direction (Plate II, Fig. 2)**1. When halted.****Change direction Right. Right—Form.**

The right-hand man will make a full turn in the required direction, and the remainder a right incline.

Quick—March.

The right-hand man will lead on two paces and mark time and the remainder will mark time when they come up into the new alignment.

For—ward.

The squad will move forward in the new direction.

2. When on the move.**Change direction Right. Right—Form.**

The right-hand man will make a full turn in the required direction, lead on two paces and mark time ; the remainder

will incline to the right and mark time as they come up into the new alignment.

For—ward.

The squad will move forward in the new direction.

3. If the command is preceded by the caution *At the Halt* each man will halt and take up his dressing on reaching the new alignment.

4. Forming at any angle will be practised.

37. *Marching as in file*

1. *From the halt.*

Move to the Right (or Left) as in file. Right (or Left)—Turn.

As in Sec. 20. The men will cover each other exactly. The head of the man immediately in front of each soldier, when he is correctly covered, will conceal the heads of all others in front of him.

Quick—March.

The whole will step off, without increasing or diminishing the distance from each other.

i. This movement will also be practised on the move.

ii. Should the squad be required to move in the original direction the command will be—*The squad will advance. Left (or Right)—Turn.*

2. *Changing direction.*

Change direction Right. Right—Wheel.

The leading man will move round a quarter of the circumference of a circle, having a radius of four feet. The other

men, in succession, will follow in his footsteps without increasing or diminishing their distances from each other or altering the time, but shortening the pace a little with the inner foot.

3. Rear Files—Cover.

If the squad is halted or ordered to mark time when only a part of the men have wheeled into the new direction, the men who have not yet wheeled will cover off on those who have, moving to their places by the shortest route.

4. *Forming squad.* (Plate II, Fig. 3).

On the Left (or Right), Form—Squad.

The leading man will lead on two paces and mark time, the remainder will make a left (or right) incline and move up into line with him, marking time as they come into line.

For—ward.

The squad will move on in line in the direction in which it was originally marching in file.

When squad is formed on the right, the left will normally be ordered to direct.

5. If the order is :—

At the Halt, on the Left (or Right), Form—Squad.

The leading man will lead on two paces and halt, the remainder will make a left (or right) incline and form upon him, halting and dressing as they come into line.

SQUAD DRILL IN TWO RANKS

38. *Formation of a squad in two ranks*

The squad will now be formed for drill in two ranks. The men will take their places in succession, commencing from the right unless they are ordered to form on the other flank, each occupying a lateral space of 24 inches. Each man of the rear rank will be placed 60 inches from the man in front of him, measuring from heel to heel, and will cover him correctly, the two men thus placed forming a file. When the squad consists of an uneven number of men the third man from the left of the front rank will be a blank (or incomplete) file; that is, he will have no rear rank man.

39. *Dressing*

1. **For ceremonial purposes** men will be taught to dress on the word of command *Right (or Left)—Dress*. Both ranks will act as in Sec. 30, 1; in addition, the rear rank will correctly cover the front rank.

2. Normally, however, in squad drill, each man will take up his dressing without further word of command on completion of the movement, both ranks acting as in Sec. 30, 2, and the rear rank correctly covering the front rank.

40. *Numbering a squad***Squad—Number.**

The men of the front rank will number off smartly as in Sec. 31. Each rear rank man will have the same number as his front rank man.

41. *Opening and closing a squad*

1. **Open Ranks—March.**

The odd numbers of the front rank will step forward two paces, the even numbers of the rear rank will step back two paces. Ranks will dress as in Sec. 30, 2.

2. **Reform Ranks—March.**

The odd numbers of the front rank will step back two paces, the even numbers of the rear rank will step forward two paces, and each man will correct his dressing without further word of command as in Sec. 30, 2.

42. *Marching in line*

1. **The Squad will Advance. By the Right (or Left), Quick—March. Or The Squad will Advance. By the Right (or Left) Double—March.**

The whole will step off, the front rank man of the file on the named flank taking points to march on. The men of each rank, except the directing file, will glance occasionally to the named flank to maintain their dressing. The men of the rear rank will also preserve their covering and distance from the front rank.

If there is a blank file, he will always be with the leading rank; when the squad is turned about on the march he will mark time two paces on the word *about*, thus gaining his position in the new leading rank before the turn is completed; if the squad is turned about at the halt he will take two paces to the rear on the word *about* and turn with the squad.

2. When a squad is turned about the ranks are thereby changed, and the former rear rank becomes the front rank ; the former front rank the rear rank.

When, however, the squad is required to fall back for a short distance only before resuming the original direction, ranks will not be changed. In this case the command will be *The squad will retire, About—Turn*, and on completion *The squad will advance, About—Turn*.

3. *The diagonal march.*

Diagonal march. Right In—cline.

As in para. 1 above. The men of the rear rank will preserve their relative positions with the men of the front rank, in order that they may cover correctly when they are again turned into line.

Should the squad be required to move in the original direction, the command will be : *The squad will advance. Left In—cline*.

4. *Changing direction.*

Change direction Right (or Left). Right (or Left)—Form.

The right-hand man of the front rank will make a full turn in the required direction, and the remainder of the front rank a right (or left) incline. The rear rank will stand fast.

Quick—March.

The right-hand man of the front rank will move forward two paces and mark time ; the remainder will step off, the men of the rear rank conforming to the movements of their front rank men. The whole will mark time when they come into their places in the new alignment.

For—ward.

The whole will move forward in the new direction.

i. If the command is *At the halt, Right—Form*, the right-hand man will make a full turn to the right. On the command *Quick—March* he will advance two paces and halt, and the remainder will halt and dress as they come up in line with him.

ii. Squads may be formed half (or quarter) right (or left) on the command *Half (or Quarter) Right (or Left)—Form*.

43. Marching in file**1. Turning into file.**

Move to the Right (or Left) in File. Right (or Left)—Turn.

The whole will turn to the right (or left) and lead on in that direction without checking the pace. The men of the rear rank will dress by their front rank men.

2. Changing direction.

Change direction Right (or Left). Right (or Left)—Wheel.

The inner man of the leading file will move round a quarter of the circumference of a circle having a radius of four feet, stepping short to enable the outer man of the file to wheel with him. When the quarter circle is completed, the file leads on in the new direction. The other files in succession will follow in the footsteps of the leading file without increasing or diminishing their distances from each other or altering the time.

If the squad is halted, or ordered to mark time, when only a part of it has wheeled into the new direction, the remainder will cover off as directed in Sec. 37, 3, on the command *Rear Files—Cover*.

3. *Forming squad.*

On the Left (or Right), Form—Squad.

The left-hand man of the leading file, if the formation is on the left (or right-hand man of the leading file, if the formation is on the right), will lead on two paces and mark time. The remainder will incline in the named direction, and move up in line with him, marking time as they come into alignment.

For—ward.

The squad will move on in line in the direction in which it was originally marching in file.

- i. After forming squad on the right, the left will normally be ordered to direct.
- ii. If the command is *At the Halt. On the Left (or Right) Form—Squad*, the left (or right) hand man of the leading file will lead on two paces and halt. The remainder will incline in the named direction and move up, halting and dressing as they reach their places on the new alignment.
- iii. The squad may be formed obliquely to the line of march by the command *Half (Quarter or Three-quarter) Left (or Right). Form—Squad*.

4. *Forming single file.*

Advance in Single File from the Right. Quick---March.

The file on the right will at once move off, the remaining files marking time until the file on their right is clear, when

they will follow on; inclining and covering off the files in front.

i. If the squad is marching in file, the command will be *Form Single—File*. The front rank man of the leading file will then lead on, the remainder marking time to get into their places, and following on as described above.

ii. A squad may similarly advance in single file from fours.

5. *Forming two deep.*

Form—Two-Deep.

The leading man will mark time, the remainder of the squad will regain their positions in file, marking time as they reach their places.

For—ward.

The squad will move forward in file.

44. *Forming fours* (Plate III)

1. *To form fours.*

Form—Fours.

The even numbers will take a pace of 30 inches back with the left foot, and then a side pace of 24 inches with the right, so as to cover their odd numbers. In this formation the squad will stand in fours.

i. Great attention must be paid to training men when marching in fours, to keep the prescribed distance from and to cover exactly the man in front.

Odd numbers are right files and even numbers are left files.

- ii. In order that the left section of fours may always be complete, the file on the left of a squad or section will act as the left file and the second file from the left as a right file in forming fours.
- iii. In the case of an odd file or a blank even file, as in Figs. 1 and 3, the rear rank man of the third or fourth file respectively from the left flank, will take a pace of 30 inches directly to the rear, in order to be in line with the rear rank men of its left files.

In the case of a blank odd file (Fig. 2) that file will march on the directing flank when in fours.

2. *To form two-deep.*

Form—Two-deep.

The left files will move to their original position in line by taking a side pace of 24 inches with the left foot and a pace forward of 30 inches with the right ; or if the squad has been turned about while in fours, a side pace with the right foot and a pace back with the left.

i. In forming fours with the rear rank in front, left files will take a pace of 30 inches to their front with the right foot, and one of 24 inches to the left with the left, thus bringing them into the same relative position as regards right files as they occupy after forming fours in the usual way.

They will form two deep by taking a side pace with the right foot and a pace back with the left.

ii. In the case of an odd file or a blank even file (Figs. 1 and 3) the rear rank man will take a pace directly to his front.

iii. A blank odd file (Fig. 2) will take a pace forward when fours are formed with the rear rank in front.

They form two deep by taking a pace back with the left foot.

3. *To the right or left.*

Move to the Right (or Left) in Fours. Form—Fours.

As above.

Right (or Left).

Each man of the squad will turn in the named direction.

Except during the elementary training of recruits, the command *Form Fours—Right* (or *Left*) will, in cases where no other caution is indicated in this manual, be preceded by the caution *Move to the Right* (or *Left*) *in Fours*, whether the troops are halted or on the march.

4. *To re-form line.*

Left (or Right)—Turn.

Each man of the squad will turn in the direction named, and then form two-deep, as described above.

If it is required to remain in fours, the word of command will be *In Fours, Left* (or *Right*)—*Turn*.

5. *When on the march in line.*

Move to the Right (or Left) in Fours, Form Fours—Right (or Left).

As in paras. 3 and 4, but the right files will mark time two paces, while the left files are moving to their places.

Should the command *Right* (or *Left*) *In—cline* be given, when a squad is marching in fours, the squad will incline instead of turning in the required direction.

When inclining the squad will remain in fours.

6. When in file at the halt.

Form—Fours.

Right of the squad leading.

The left files will take a pace to the right with the right foot and a pace forward with the left foot, thus bringing them on the right of the right files.

Left of the squad leading.

The left files take a pace to the left with the left foot, and a pace to the rear with the right foot, thus bringing them on the left of the right files.

Form—Two-deep.

Right of the squad leading.

The left files will take a pace to the rear with the right foot, and a pace to the left with the left foot, thus bringing them in rear of the right files.

Left of the squad leading.

The left files take a pace forward with the left foot, and a pace to the right with the right foot, thus bringing them to the front of the right files.

7. *When in file on the march.*

Form—Fours.

The same motions as when halted, except that the right files mark time two paces in each case so as to allow the left files to move to their places.

Form—Two-Deep.

The same motions as at the halt, the right files again marking time two paces to allow the left files to move to their places.

8. A test of good marching in fours is the position of the men when they are turned into line. If there are no gaps or irregularities in the line and the squad occupies the same frontage as before it formed fours, the marching is good. This test should be applied during the instruction of recruits, and the slightest carelessness as regards the maintenance of exact distances should be checked.

45. *Movements in fours*

1. *Changing direction.*

Change direction Right. Right—Wheel.

The inner man of the leading four will move round a quarter of the circumference of a circle having a radius of four feet, stepping short to enable the other men of the four to wheel with him. When the quarter circle is completed the four leads on in the new direction. The other fours in succession will follow in the footsteps of the leading four without increasing or diminishing their distances from each other or altering the time.

2. Rear Fours—Cover.

If the squad is halted or ordered to mark time before the whole squad has wheeled into the new direction, the fours which have not yet wheeled will cover off on those which have, moving to their places by the shortest route.

3. *Forming squad when moving to the right.***On the Left. Form—Squad.**

Each man will complete the pace with the left foot. The right files will mark time two paces, the left files will take a pace to the rear with the right foot and one to the left with the left foot, and the whole of the squad, except the right-hand man of the front rank, who will lead forward two paces and then mark time, will make a half left turn together and move up to their places in line, each man marking time when he reaches his position in line.

For—ward.

The squad will move on in line in the direction in which it was originally marching in fours.

When a squad moving to the **right** in fours forms squad on the **right**, the right files mark time **three** paces; the left files take a pace to the rear with the right foot and one to the left with the left foot, **mark time one pace** and the whole make a half right turn together and move up.

4. *Forming squad when moving to the left.***On the Right. Form—Squad.**

Each man will complete the pace with the right foot. The right files will mark time two paces, the left files will take a

pace to the front with the left foot, and one to the right with the right foot, and the whole except the left-hand man of the front rank, who will lead forward two paces and then mark time, will make a half right turn together and move up to their places in line, each man marking time when he reaches his position in line.

For—ward.

As in para. 3 above.

i. When a squad moving to the left in fours forms squad on the **left**, the right files **mark time three paces**, the left files take a pace to the front with the left foot and one to the right with the right foot, **mark time one pace**, and the whole make a half left turn together.

ii. When the command *On the Right* (or *Left*), *Form—Squad* is preceded by the caution *At the Halt* each man will halt when he reaches his position in line, instead of marking time.

46. Drill with the cane or pace stick

1. Position of cane at attention.

The cane will be held firmly in the right hand, in a perpendicular position close to the right side of the body, first joint of the forefinger of the right hand underneath knob of cane and pointing towards the thigh, thumb across the front of the cane. The remaining three fingers grasping the cane.

2. Position of cane when standing at ease.

The back of the right hand in palm of the left. Cane to be between the right arm and the body, ferrule pointing obliquely upwards and to the right front.

3. *Position of the cane on the march.*

On the command *Quick—March*, step off as described in Sec. 23. As the left foot comes to the ground the first time bring both hands smartly to the centre of the cane (one movement), cane to be kept perpendicular in the right side. As the left foot comes to the ground the second time, cut the left hand to the side, and carry the cane to the right side, cane to be carried parallel to the ground, balanced between the thumb and the first two fingers, ferrule to the front. The arms to be swung as in marching without canes, but the cane must be kept parallel to the ground.

The cane is now at the trail.

4. *Halting.*

On receiving the command *Halt*, canes will be kept at the trail. After a slight pause, canes will be brought to the position of attention in two movements, viz. :—

- i. Seize the cane with the left hand at the centre and bring to a perpendicular position in right side, at the same time move the right hand to the knob of cane as in position of attention.
- ii. Cut the left hand smartly away to the left side.

5. *Turning about.*

When halted.—Cane is kept in position of attention.

On the march.—On the first movement of the turn (left foot) the cane will be brought to a perpendicular position in front of the right shoulder, upper part of the arm close to the side,

forearm horizontal, hand in line with the waist-belt. On the first pace (right foot) after the completion of turn, the cane will be brought to the trail.

Saluting with the cane is dealt with in Chapter III.

47. Dismissing with or without arms

1. Squad. Dis—miss.

The squad will turn to the right, salute, and, after a pause, equal to two paces in quick time, break off quietly, and leave the parade ground in quick time.

- i. If the squad is under arms, arms will be sloped before the squad is dismissed (Rifle regiments will shoulder arms). But on wet days, to avoid damaging the uniform with wet rifles, troops will be dismissed at the order.
- ii. If no officer is on parade the men will not salute before they break off.

2. *Dismissing with the cane.*

If an officer is on parade, on the command *Dis—miss*, the squad will turn to the right, place the cane under the left arm, ferrule to the rear, cut the right hand to the side, salute to the front, and break off in quick time. A pause equal to two paces in quick time will be made between each motion.

If no officer is on parade, the squad will, on the command *Dis—miss*, turn to the right, keeping the cane in position of attention.

SQUAD DRILL WITH ARMS

RIFLE EXERCISES

48. *General rules*

1. Squad drill with arms will be combined with instruction in :—

- i. Care of arms, including names of the principal parts of the rifle.
- ii. Trigger pressing.
- iii. Accuracy of aim.
- iv. Bayonet training.

See Chap. II, Small Arms Training, Vol. I, 1924.

2. It is important that the above instruction should commence from the time the recruit is issued with his rifle, in order to avoid faulty methods in the early stages.

3. Squad drill with arms should be practised occasionally when men are some distance away from each other, in order to accustom them to handle their arms correctly and steadily when separated from their comrades.

4. Squad drill with arms should include instruction in the duties of guards, and paying compliments (Chapter XIII).

5. The following instructions apply to the Rifle, magazine, short, Lee-Enfield (S.M.L.E.), Lee-Enfield, Enfield 1914, and Lee-Metford rifle. A special note is made when the instructions for the short Lee-Enfield rifle do not apply to the Lee-Enfield, Enfield 1914, or Lee-Metford rifle.

6. When rifle exercises are performed judging the time, when halted, the motions will be carried out at the rate of 60 to the minute. When performed judging the time, on the march, each motion will be carried out as the left foot meets the ground.

7. Squads drilling with rifles will be practised in the different marches and variations of step described in the foregoing sections.

The disengaged arm will be allowed to swing naturally as described in Secs. 23 and 26.

8. During the handling of the rifle and throughout every movement of it, the head must be kept perfectly still, except where expressly stated otherwise.

49. *Falling in with arms at the order* (Plate IV)

The recruit will fall in as described in Sec. 29, with the rifle held perpendicularly at his right side, the butt on the ground, its toe in line with the toe of the right boot. The right arm to be slightly bent, the hand to hold the rifle at or near the band (with the Enfield 1914, Lee-Enfield or Lee-Metford rifle, near the lower band), back of the hand to the right, thumb against the thigh, fingers together and slanting towards the ground, elbow to the rear.

When each man has taken up his dressing he will *stand at ease*.

50. *To stand at ease and stand easy from the order*

1. **Stand at—Ease.**

Keeping the right leg straight, carry the left foot about 12 inches to the left so that the weight of the body rests

equally on both feet. At the same time push the muzzle of the rifle smartly forward with the right hand, the right arm straight, and close to the side, without allowing the right shoulder to drop, toe of the butt remaining in line with the toe of the right boot, the left arm to be kept in the position of attention.

2. Stand—Easy.

On the command *Stand—Easy*, the right hand will be slid up the rifle to the piling swivel and the men will act as in Sec. 18.

3. On the caution *Squad*, &c., the right hand will be slid down to the band, and the position of *stand at ease* assumed.

4. The above procedure is the same with or without bayonets fixed.

51. *The attention from stand at ease*

Squad—attention.

The left foot will be brought smartly up to the right and the rifle returned to the *order*.

52. *The slope from the order*

Slope Arms—One.

Throw the rifle upwards with the right hand, catching it with both hands at the same time, left hand at the back sight (Enfield 1914, below the dial sight), the right hand at the small of the butt, thumb to the left, elbow to the rear, right arm nearly straight, rifle kept perpendicular, close into the right side, shoulders to be kept square.

Two.

Carry the rifle across the body, and place it flat on the left shoulder, magazine outwards from the body. As the rifle comes on the shoulder seize the butt with the left hand, the first two joints of the fingers grasping the upper side of the butt, the thumb about one inch above the toe, left elbow close to the side, forearm horizontal, and the heel of the butt in line with the centre of the left thigh.

Three. (Plate V)

Cut away the right hand to the position of *attention*. Rifle to be kept perfectly still.

*53. The order from the slope***Order Arms—One.**

Bring the rifle down to the full extent of the left arm, at the same time meeting it with the right hand between the back sight and the band (at the lower band, Enfield 1914, Lee-Enfield and Lee-Metford rifle), arm close to the body. Butt not to be drawn to the rear.

Two.

Bring the rifle to the right side, steadying it at the time with the left hand at the nose cap (at the upper band, Enfield 1914, Lee-Enfield and Lee-Metford rifle), butt just clear of the ground.

Three.

Place the butt quietly on the ground, cutting the left hand away to the side.

54. *The present from the slope*

Present Arms—One.

Grasp the rifle with the right hand at the small, forearm close to the body.

Two.

Raise the rifle with the right hand perpendicularly in front of the centre of the body, guard to the left ; at the same time place the left hand smartly on the stock, wrist on the magazine, fingers pointing upwards, thumb close to the forefinger, point of the thumb in line with the mouth ; the left elbow to be close to the butt, the right elbow and butt close to the body.

Three. (Plate VI)

Quitting the rifle with the left hand bring the rifle down perpendicularly in front of and about three inches from the centre of the body, turning the guard to the front, holding at the full extent of the right arm, fingers together slanting downwards, and meet it smartly with the left hand immediately behind the back sight, outside the sling (Enfield 1914, just below the dial sight, thumb in line with the bead and pointing towards the muzzle), thumb pointing towards the muzzle ; at the same time place the hollow of the right foot against the left heel, both knees straight. The weight of the rifle to be supported by the left hand.

55. *The slope from the present*

Slope Arms—One.

Bring the right foot up in line with the left and at the same time place the rifle on the left shoulder as described in the second motion of the *slope* from the *order*.

Two.

Cut away the right hand to the side ; rifle to be kept still.

56. *The present from the order (for Rifle regiments only)***Present Arms—One.**

Throw the rifle upwards with the right hand, catching it with the left hand at the point of balance ; thumb of the left hand in the hollow of the right shoulder, and the right hand at the small of the butt, thumb to the left, elbow to the rear.

Two.

Bring the rifle to a perpendicular position in front of the centre of the body, turning the guard to the left ; at the same time place the left hand smartly on the stock, wrist on the magazine, fingers pointing upwards, thumb close to the forefinger, point of the thumb in line with the mouth ; left elbow close to the butt, right elbow and butt close to the body.

Three.

As in the third motion of the *present* from the *slope*.

57. *The order from the present (for Rifle regiments only)***Order Arms—One.**

Carry the rifle to the right side and seize it with the right hand at the band (with Enfield 1914, Lee-Enfield or Lee-Metford rifle, at the lower band), and with the left hand round the nose-cap (with Enfield 1914, Lee-Enfield or Lee-Metford

rifle, below the upper band), butt just clear of the ground ; at the same time bring the right foot smartly up to the left.

Two.

Place the butt quietly on the ground as at the *order*, cutting the left hand away to the side.

58. To fix bayonets from the order

Fix.

The right-hand man will take three paces forward at the short trail.

In the case of a company or battalion in line the number of paces taken by the right-hand man will be five and ten respectively.

Bayonets—One.

Seize the handle of the bayonet with the left hand, back of the hand to the front, thumb and fingers to the rear ; at the same time push the muzzle of the rifle sharply forward ; front rank men turning the head and eyes to the right, looking straight at the right-hand man who will look to the left.

Two. (Plate VII)

Taking the time from the right-hand man, draw the bayonet, turning the point upwards and keeping the elbow down. Place the handle on the bayonet standard, with the ring over the stud on the nose-cap (with the Enfield 1914, Lee-Enfield or Lee-Metford rifle, over the muzzle), pressing it home to the catch. The left hand should be placed as shown in the illustration. Body and head to be erect. After pressing

his bayonet home to the catch, the right-hand man will raise his disengaged arm to the full extent upwards at an angle of 135 degrees.

Three.

Taking the time from the right-hand man bring the rifle to the *order* ; at the same time cut away the left hand to the side, front rank turning the head and eyes to the front.

The right-hand man will then take three paces to the rear, at the short trail, and align himself with the front rank.

In the case of a company or battalion in line the right-hand man will turn about and, at the short trail, resume his original position, instead of stepping back the five or ten paces as the case may be.

i. In the above motions the front rank time their movements by the right-hand man and the rear rank will take their time from the front rank.

ii. Rifle regiments use the word *swords* instead of *bayonets*.

59. *Unfixing bayonets from the order*

Unfix.

The left-hand man will take three paces forward at the short trail.

In the case of a company or battalion in line the number of paces taken by the left-hand man will be five and ten respectively.

Bayonets.—One. (Plate VIII)

Keeping the heels closed, place the rifle between and grip it with the knees, guard to the front. At the same time

seize the rifle with the left hand, knuckles to the front, thumb on the bayonet bolt spring ; the right hand to be kept on the rifle.

Two.

Seize the bayonet handle smartly with the right hand, knuckles to the front ; draw the rifle towards the body with the knees and press the spring with the left thumb. Raise the bayonet about one inch and at the same time the front rank men, turning the head and eyes to the left, will look straight at the left-hand man. Rear rank looking to the front. The left-hand man raising his right arm straight and upwards at an angle of 135 degrees, at the same time turning his head and eyes to the right.

Three.

Taking the time from the left-hand man, drop the point to the left side, ring to the rear, returning the bayonet half-way into the scabbard, keeping the forearm square with the body (the left-hand man forcing his bayonet home), at the same time seize the scabbard with the left hand, thumb underneath the frog, guiding the bayonet into the scabbard with the forefinger of the left hand.

Four.

The left-hand man will raise his right hand smartly as in **Two**, and on this signal remainder will force the bayonet home.

Five.

Taking the time from the left-hand man seize the rifle with the right hand at the band (Lee-Enfield and Lee-Metford rifles at the lower band), retaining hold of the scabbard with the left hand.

Six.

Taking the time from left-hand man return to the order and at the same time cutting the left hand to the side, front rank turning the head and eyes to the front.

The left-hand man will then take three paces to the rear, at the short trail, and align himself with the front rank.

In the case of a company or battalion in line the left-hand man will turn about and, at the short trail, resume his original position, instead of moving back the five or ten paces respectively.

In the above motions the left-hand man will take their time by the left-hand man and the right-hand man will take their time from the front rank.

60. INSPECTION OF ARMS

1. A squad, parading in two ranks, will be opened and closed as in Sec. 14, 1.

2. *Inspection of arms from the order.*

For Inspection Post—Arms.

Throw the rifle, muzzle leading, with the right hand smartly across the body, guard to the left and downwards, the barrel crossing opposite the point of the left shoulder, and meet it at the same time with the left hand close behind the backsight, thumb and fingers round the rifle, the left wrist to be opposite the left breast, both elbows close to the body.

Turn the safety catch completely over to the front with the thumb of the right hand (with Lee-Enfield or Lee-Metford rifle, lower the safety catch with the thumb of the right hand).

Pull out the cut-off, first pressing it downwards, with the thumb, then seize the knob with the forefinger and thumb of the right hand, and, taking the time from the right-hand man, turn it sharply upwards, and draw back the bolt to its full extent; then seize the butt with the right hand immediately behind the bolt, thumb pointing to the muzzle. [Enfield 1914. Turn the safety catch completely over to the front with the thumb of the right hand, seize the knob with the forefinger and thumb of the right hand, turn it sharply upwards and draw back the bolt to its full extent, then seize the butt with the right hand immediately behind the bolt, thumb pointing to the muzzle.]

3. *Inspection of arms from the slope.*

For Inspection. Port—Arms.

Seize the rifle with the right hand at the small and bring it down to the *port*, meeting the rifle with the left hand close behind the back sight; then proceed as in para. 2 above.

4. *To ease springs, or charge magazines and come to the order.*

Ease—Springs.

From the position described above, work the bolt rapidly backwards and forwards until all cartridges are removed from the magazine and chamber* allowing them to fall to the ground, then close the *cut-off* (except with S.M.L.E. Mark III* rifles which have no cut off) by placing the right hand over the bolt and pressing the *cut-off* inwards, then

* This precaution will also be adopted when magazines are not charged, and at drill it should be presumed that five rounds are in the magazine and chamber.

close the *breech*, press the *trigger*, turn the *safety catch* over to the rear with the first finger of the right hand, and return the hand to the small. [Enfield 1914. From the position described above, draw back the left hand, place the fingers on the magazine platform, depress the rear end of it, engage the bolt over it by moving the bolt slightly forward with the right hand, return the left hand to the point of balance, close the bolt, press the trigger, apply the safety catch with the thumb of the right hand, and return the hand to the small of the butt.]

Charge—Magazines.

The *magazine* will hold two chargers of five cartridges each, but should, in ordinary circumstances, be loaded with one only. If it is desired to charge the magazine without loading the rifle, the top cartridge may be pressed downward with the thumb and the *cut-off* closed.

The *breech* will then be closed, trigger pressed and the *safety catch* applied.

When using a rifle which is not fitted with a *cut-off* and it is required to charge magazines, keep the pressure on the top cartridges with the thumb of the right hand and draw the bolt head over it with the little finger, close the *breech*, press the *trigger* and apply the *safety catch*.

5. To order arms from the port.

Order Arms—One.

Holding the rifle firmly in the left hand, seize it with the right hand at the band (with Enfield 1914, Lee-Enfield or Lee-Metford rifle, at the lower band).

Two.

As in the second motion of the *order* from the *slope*.

Three.

As in the third motion of the *order* from the *slope*.

6. To slope arms from the port.

Slope Arms—One.

Place the rifle on the left shoulder as described in the second motion of the *slope* from the *order* (Sec. 52).

Two.

As in the third motion of the *slope* from the *order*.

61. Instructions for inspecting arms

1. When arms are inspected at the *port* only, as in inspecting a platoon on parade, the officer, warrant officer, or N.C.O. will see that the exterior of the rifle is clean and free from rust; that the magazine and action are clean and in good order; that the sights are at zero; and that no parts are loose or damaged. He will here and there examine the bore of a rifle to see that it has been cleaned and is free from obstructions.

2. Each soldier, when the officer, warrant officer or N.C.O. has passed the file next to him, will, without further word of command, *ease springs*, *order arms* and *stand at ease*.

62. To examine arms

Examine—Arms.

Both ranks, being at the *port*, will come to the position for loading (see Sec. 57, 2, Small Arms Training, Vol. I. 1924) with

the muzzle so inclined as to enable the officer, warrant officer or N.C.O. to look through the barrel, the thumbnail of the right hand being placed in front of the bolt to reflect light into the barrel.

The soldier, when the officer, warrant officer or N.C.O. has passed the next file to him, will act as detailed in Sec. 61, 2.

i. If it is necessary to examine arms, the men, when in the position of *for inspection*, *port arms*, will be cautioned to remain at the *port*. Ranks will be closed, as in Sec. 14, 1, when the examination has been completed.

ii. In ordering arms from the examine, the first motion is to seize the rifle with the right hand between the back sight and the band (Enfield 1914, below the lower band), at the same time bringing the left foot back to the right. With the second motion the rifle will be brought to the right side, the left hand steadying the rifle, as in the second motion of the *order* from the *slope*. The third motion is the same as the third motion of the *order* from the *slope*.

63. *To trail arms from the order* (Plate IX)

Trail—Arms.

By a slight bend of the right arm give the rifle a cant forward and seize it at the point of balance, bringing it at once to a horizontal position at the side at the full extent of the right arm, which should hang easily from the shoulder, fingers and thumb round the rifle.

64. *To order arms from the trail*

Order—Arms.

Raise the muzzle, catch the rifle at the band (with Enfield 1914, Lee-Enfield or Lee-Metford rifle at the lower band) and come to the *order*.

The *trail* is not to be used in close order drill except by Rifle regiments.

It should be used, however, in the field when the men are advancing in section groups or other similar formation and when they extend.

65. To trail arms from the slope

Trail Arms—One.

Keeping the rifle in the position of the *slope*, seize it at the point of balance with the right hand.

Two.

With the right hand bring the rifle to a horizontal position at the right side (as in Sec. 63) at the same time cutting the left hand to the side.

66. To slope arms from the trail

Slope Arms—One.

With the right hand place the rifle on the left shoulder in the position of the *slope*, at the same time seizing the butt with the left hand as in the second motion of the *slope* from the *order* (Sec. 52).

Two.

Cut away the right hand to the side.

67. The shoulder from the order (for Rifle regiments only)

Shoulder Arms—One.

Throw the rifle upwards with the right hand, catching it with the left hand in line with the elbow; at the same time

slipping the second finger of the right hand inside the guard, close the first and second fingers on the magazine, thumb and remaining fingers pointing downwards; the upper part of the barrel to rest in the hollow of the shoulder. (With Enfield 1914 rifle—Give the rifle a cant upwards with the right hand, catching it with the left hand in line with the elbow, at the same time slipping the first finger of the right hand inside the guard, second finger under the rear of the guard, thumb and remaining fingers pointing downwards; the upper part of the barrel to rest in the hollow of the shoulder.)

Two.

Cut the left hand to the side.

68. The order from the shoulder (for Rifle regiments only)

Order Arms—One.

Relax the grasp of the right hand and allow the rifle to drop till the butt is within two inches of the ground. At the same time seize the rifle with the left hand at the nose cap (Enfield 1914, upper band), and with the right at the band (Enfield 1914, lower band).

Two.

Place the butt quietly on the ground as at the *order*, cutting the left hand to the side.

69. The shoulder from the trail (for Rifle regiments only)

Shoulder Arms—One.

Tightening the grasp of the right hand, bring the rifle to a perpendicular position, and hold it with the left hand in

line with the elbow, then seize it with the right hand as at the *shoulder*.

Two.

Cut away the left hand to the side.

70. The trail from the shoulder (for Rifle regiments only)

Trail Arms—One.

Seize the rifle with the left hand in line with the elbow, arm close to the body.

Two.

Grasp the rifle with the right hand at the point of balance, then bring it down to the *trail*, at the same time cutting the left hand to the side.

Rifle regiments march at the *shoulder* when moving in file, the men shouldering their arms on the command *Quick—March*, or, if already on the move, on the command which brings them into file.

71. To change arms when at the slope

Change Arms—One.

Seize the butt of the rifle with the right hand, back of the hand up, at the same time slipping the left hand up to the small.

Two.

Carry the rifle, turning the magazine outwards, on to the right shoulder, bringing it well to the front, so as to clear the head.

Three.

Cut the left hand to the side.

To change arms from the right to the left shoulder act as above, reading *left* for *right*, and *right* for *left*.

72. To change arms from the trail**Change Arms—One.**

Bring the rifle to a perpendicular position in front of the right shoulder, magazine to the front, upper part of the arm close to the side, forearm horizontal, hand in line with the waist-belt.

Two.

Pass the rifle across the front of the body, catching it with the left hand at the point of balance, at the same time cutting the right hand smartly to the side. In this position the rifle is to be held perpendicularly and opposite the left shoulder, magazine to the front, upper part of the left arm close to the side, left forearm horizontal, hand in line with the waist-belt.

Three.

Lower the rifle to the full extent of the left arm at the *trail*.

To change arms from the left to the right act as above, reading *left* for *right* and *right* for *left*.

73. The short trail

No word of command.

Raise the rifle about three inches from the ground, keeping otherwise in the position of the *order*.

If standing with ordered arms, and directed to form fours, to close to the right or left, to step back, or to take any named number of paces, men will come to the *short trail*.

74. *Fixing and unfixing bayonets on the march*

1. *Fixing bayonets.*

Fix—Bayonets.

i. When at the *slope* seize the rifle with the right hand at the point of balance and bring it to the trail, with the muzzle sloping upwards in front of the right breast. Draw and fix the bayonet with the left hand. Bring the rifle to the *slope*.

ii. When at the *trail* raise the muzzle of the rifle and proceed as above described taking the time from the right-hand man.

2. *Unfixing bayonets.*

Unfix—Bayonets.

i. When at the *slope* seize the rifle with the right hand at the point of balance as in fixing, throw the rifle under the right arm-pit; unfix the bayonet and return it to the scabbard; bring the rifle to the trail muzzle sloping upwards. Taking the time from the right-hand man of the squad, bring the rifle to the *slope*.

ii. When at the *trail* raise the muzzle and proceed as above described and return the rifle to the trail.

75. *To secure arms from the slope*

Secure Arms—One.

Bring the rifle down to the full extent of the left arm at the same time meeting it with the right hand between the back sight and band (or the lower band Enfield 1914, Lee-Enfield or Lee-Metford rifle), arms close to the body.

Two.

Turn the magazine to the front, seizing the rifle with the left hand at the hand-guard.

Three. (Plate X)

Give the butt a sharp cant to the rear, place the breech under the left arm-pit, knob of the bolt to the rear, muzzle inclined slightly to the right and downwards, at the same time cut away the right hand to the side.

*76. To slope arms from the secure***Slope Arms—One**

Bring the rifle to a perpendicular position opposite the left shoulder, guard to the front, at the same time meeting it at the small of the butt with the right hand.

Two.

Carry the rifle on to the left shoulder, turning the magazine outwards, seizing the butt with the left hand as in the second motion of the *slope* from the *order*. (Sec. 52.)

Three.

Cut away the right hand to the side.

*77. To secure arms from the order***Secure Arms—One.**

Give the rifle a cant upwards with the right hand and seize it at the point of balance, bringing it to a perpendicular position in front of the right shoulder, guard to the front, upper part of the arm close to the side, forearm horizontal, hand in line with the waist-belt.

Two.

Pass the rifle across the front of the body, catch it with the

left hand at the point of balance, at the same time cutting the right hand smartly away to the side.

Three. (Plate X)

Keeping the grip of the left hand at the point of balance, bring the breech up under the arm-pit by lowering the left forearm, the muzzle of the rifle slanting slightly off to the right and downwards.

78. To order arms from the secure

Order Arms—One.

Seize the rifle with the right hand at the band.

Two.

Bring the rifle across the body to the second position of the *order* from the *slope*.

Three.

Place the butt quietly on the ground, at the same time cutting the left hand smartly away to the side.

79. To secure arms from the trail and vice versa

1. Secure Arms—One.

Keeping the grip of the right hand at the point of balance, bring the rifle to a perpendicular position in front of the right shoulder, as in the first position of the *secure* from the *order* (see Sec. 77).

Two.

As in the second motion of the *secure* from the *order* (Sec. 77).

Three. (Plate X.)

As in the third motion of the *secure* from the *order* (Sec. 77).

The rifle can be brought to the *secure* from the *trail* at the *left* side on the command *Secure—Arms*, by bending the left arm and bringing the breech up under the left arm-pit.

2. Trail Arms.—One.

As in the first motion of the *change* from the *secure* (see Sec. 80).

Two.

As in the second motion of the *change* from the *secure* (Sec. 80),

Three.

Lower the rifle to the full extent of the right arm at the *trail*.

From the *secure* under the *right* arm, the rifle will be brought to the *trail* as in "**Three**", above, on the command *Trail—Arms*.

80. To change arms from the secure**Change Arms—One.**

Bring the rifle to a perpendicular position in front of the left shoulder, magazine to the front, upper part of the arm close to the side, forearm horizontal, hand in line with the waist-belt.

Two.

Pass the rifle across the front of the body, catching it with the right hand at the point of balance, at the same time cutting the left hand smartly to the side. In this position the rifle is to be held perpendicular and opposite the right shoulder, magazine to the front, upper part of the right arm close to the side, right forearm horizontal, hand in line with the waist-belt.

Three.

By bending the right arm, bring the breech up under the right arm-pit, muzzle slanting downwards.

Note.—To change arms from the right to the left act as above, reading *right* for *left* and *left* for *right*.

81. To sling arms

1. With unfixed bayonets.

Sling—Arms.

The sling of the rifle having been loosened to the full extent, the soldier will pass his head and right arm between the sling and rifle, muzzle upwards, rifle hanging diagonally across the back.

2. With fixed bayonets.

Sling—Arms.

The sling of the rifle having been loosened sufficiently, the rifle will be slung by passing the sling over the right or left shoulder, with the rifle hanging in a perpendicular position behind the shoulder.

The rifle is carried slung by dismounted signallers, brakesmen and drivers leading pack animals.

82. The on-guard from the slope and vice versa (See Sec. 195.)

1. On-Guard—One.

Seize the rifle with the right hand smartly at the small.

Two.

Bring the rifle down in front of the body, bayonet pointing to the front and slightly upwards, grasping it with the right hand at the small of the butt (which should be just in front of the right thigh), and with the left hand holding the rifle in the most convenient position just in front of the back sight

so that the left arm is only slightly bent. At the same time make a partial turn to the right on the right heel and advance the left foot about 12 inches.

2. Slope Arms—One.

Place the rifle on the left shoulder, seizing the butt with the left hand as for the *slope*, at the same time bring the left foot back to the right and turn to the front.

Two.

Cut away the right hand to the side.

83. *The on-guard from the order and vice versa*

1. On—Guard.

Throw the rifle up with the right hand and come smartly to the *on-guard* position as described in Sec. 82, "Two."

2. Order Arms—One.

Seize the rifle with the right hand at the band and come to the *order*, at the same time bring the left foot back to the right and turn to the front, steadying the rifle with the left hand.

Two.

Cut away the left hand to the side.

84. *To support arms from the shoulder, and vice versa (for Rifle regiments only)*

To *support arms* from the *shoulder* (for guard duties). Carry the rifle horizontally across the body, magazine to the

front, rifle on the right forearm, right hand holding the rifle as at the *shoulder*.

The *shoulder* from the *support* is the converse of the above.

85. The high-port from the on-guard and vice versa

1. High—Port.

Keeping the grasp of the rifle as in the *on-guard* position, bring the rifle to a diagonal position across the front of the body. The muzzle pointing upwards, magazine to the front and butt sufficiently advanced to enable it to be brought instantly to the shoulder to fire.

2. On—Guard.

Return to the *on-guard* position.

86. To ground arms and take up arms, from and to the order

1. Ground Arms—One.

Bend down and place the rifle gently on the ground at the right side, magazine to the right, muzzle pointing straight to the front. The right hand will be in line with the toe as it places the rifle on the ground.

Two.

Return smartly to the position of *attention*.

2. Take up Arms—One.

Bend down and seize the rifle with the right hand in line with the right toe.

Two.

Pick up the rifle and return smartly to the *order*.

87. Piling and unpling arms**1. Piling arms.****Pile Arms—One.**

The front rank will turn about, placing the butts of their rifles between their feet. The odd numbers will turn the guard of the rifles towards the right flank of the squad, the even numbers towards the left flank of the squad, at the same time the rear rank will take a pace forward, turning the guards of their rifles to the rear.

Two.

The odd numbers of the front rank will seize the rifles of the even numbers with the left hand crossing the muzzles, guards turned outwards, at the same time raising the piling swivels with the forefinger and thumb of both hands.

The even numbers of the front rank will resume the position of attention.

Three.

The even numbers of the rear rank will incline their muzzles to the front and place their rifles under their right arms, guards uppermost, at the same time seizing the piling swivel with the forefinger and thumb of the left hand. They will then link swivels through the crossed muzzles of the front rank, lower the butts to the ground placing them six inches to the right of and in line with their right toes.

Four.

The odd numbers of the rear rank, and supernumerary rank (if any), will place their rifles **perpendicularly** against the pile nearest to them and resume the position of attention.

Stand—Clear.

Ranks will step back one pace and turn to the right flank of the squad, *i.e.*, the front rank turns to the left and the rear rank to the right.

- i. If ranks have been changed the squad, &c., will be renumbered before arms are piled.
- ii. In piling arms on parade the command *Fall—Out* will be given after *Stand—Clear*. On again falling in the men will place themselves as they stood before falling out.

2. Unpiling arms.**Stand—To**

Ranks will turn inwards and take a pace forward.

Unpile Arms—One.

The whole will seize their rifles at the band with the right hand.

Two.

The whole will incline their butts inwards until the swivels become unlinked, and return to the order, at the same time the original left-hand man of the front rank will raise his

disengaged arm to an angle of 135 degrees, the rear rank looking in his direction.

Three.

Taking the time from the original left-hand man of the front rank who will cut his hand to his side, the front rank will turn about and the rear rank will turn their head and eyes to the front and take a pace to the rear.

88. *To recover from the slope*

Seize the rifle with the right hand at the small of the butt; bring the rifle to a perpendicular position in front of the body, right hand at the small of the butt and in front of the mouth, left hand on butt plate, thumb one inch from heel, fingers round the side of the butt, barrel of the rifle to the front. (Plate XI.)

89. *To slope from the recover*

Carry the rifle to the left shoulder and seize it as for the *slope*; cut away the right hand to the side.

90. *Porting and sloping arms by serjeants on the flanks of the escort to the colour*

Present—Arms.

On the first motion of the *present* the serjeants will execute the first movement of the half or three-quarter turn outwards

and seize the rifle at the small of the butt with the right hand. During the second motion of the *present* they will stand still. On the third motion of the *present* the serjeants complete the turn and bring the rifle to the *port*.

Slope—Arms.

On the first motion of the *slope* the serjeants will execute the first movement of the half or three-quarter turn, inwards and place the rifle on the shoulder at the *slope*. On the second motion of the *slope* they will complete the turn and cut the right hand to the side.

CHAPTER III

SALUTING

91. *General instructions*

1. Instructors will impress upon recruits the importance of the salute. It is a military method of greeting a superior, not a servile act. It is an outward sign of the inward spirit of discipline and respect for superiors. The general tone and feeling in a regiment is indicated as much by the manner in which the men salute and the officers return the salute as by any other action.

2. Officers paying compliments by saluting with the hand will follow the instructions laid down for soldiers. They will receive and return a salute with the courtesy it deserves.

3. The salute will be given with the right hand. In cases where from physical incapacity a right-hand salute is impossible, the salute will be given with the left hand.

4. Instruction in saluting will form part of a recruit's training. He will receive instruction in saluting without arms as soon as his squad has learned to dress with intervals. (*See Sec. 19.*)

5. Officers will be saluted at all times, whether in uniform or plain clothes.

When two or more officers are together, the senior only, whether in uniform or not, will return salutes, but in case,

such as groups of officers at conferences, or on other occasions, when salutes are likely to pass unnoticed by the senior, another officer will be detailed to return them. This is especially necessary when men salute officers in a closed motor car.

6. Officers or soldiers passing troops with uncased standards or colours will salute the standard or colours.

Cased colours will not be saluted.

7. Officers, soldiers and colours passing a military funeral will salute the body.

8. Chief gunners, chief boatswains, chief carpenters, chief artificer engineers and chief schoolmasters in the Royal Navy rank with Second Lieutenants in the Army, and will be saluted by warrant officers, N.C.Os. and men.

9. Instructions for saluting when the National Anthem is played for a royal salute, or on other occasions, are laid down in paras. 890—891, King's Regulations, 1923.

Commanders of parties will, if on the move, halt, call their men to attention and salute (officers with drawn swords coming to the *carry*) while the National Anthem is being played.

Officers and other ranks in plain clothes will remove their head-dress and stand at *attention*.

Sentries will *slope arms*.

10. The detail of sword exercises is given in the Appendix.

92. *Saluting without arms*

1. *Saluting to the front.*

i. By Numbers.

Salute by Numbers—One.

Bring the right hand smartly, with a circular motion, to the head, palm to the front, fingers extended and close together, point of the forefinger an inch above the right eye, or touching edge of peak of cap, as in illustration, thumb close to the forefinger; elbow in line, and nearly square with the shoulder. (*See Plate XII*)

Two.

Cut away the arm smartly to the side by the shortest way.

ii. Judging the time.

Salute, Judging the Time—Salute.

Go through the motions as in para. 1, i., making a pause equal to two paces in quick time between each motion.

2. *Saluting to the side.*

Saluting to the side is carried out as in para. 1, on the command *Salute*, except that, as the hand is brought to the salute, the head will be turned smartly towards the officer or instructor saluted.

3. *Saluting when carrying a cane.*

To the front (practice for delivering messages or addressing officers).

Salute to the Front—Salute.

The command *Salute* will be given as the right foot passes the left (as for *Halt*). The squad will halt, judge a pause equal to two paces in quick time, place cane smartly under left arm, ferrule to the rear, cut the right hand smartly to the right side—salute, transfer written message to right hand and deliver it to or address the officer, salute again, turn about, keeping cane under left arm, and march off in quick time. As the left foot comes to the ground the first time seize the cane with the right hand as near the centre as possible, with the back of the hand uppermost, thumb underneath. On the left foot coming to the ground again bring the cane smartly to the *trail*.

4. On the move when carrying a cane.**Salute to the Right (or Left)—Salute.**

The command *Salute* is given as the right foot is coming to the ground. As the left foot comes to the ground the first time after the word “*Salute*,” place the cane smartly under the left arm, ferrule to the rear. Next time the left foot comes to the ground (third pace) cut the right hand smartly away to the side and commence the salute on the fifth pace, turning the head towards the officer saluted. On the tenth pace (right foot) cut the right hand smartly away to the side, turning the head to the front. On left foot coming to the ground (eleventh pace) seize the cane with the right hand as near the centre as possible, back of the hand uppermost, thumb underneath. On the left foot coming to the ground (thirteenth pace) bring the cane smartly to the right side at the *trail*. The left arm is not to be swung during the salute.

5. *Passing an officer.*

i. When a soldier passes an officer he will salute on the third pace before reaching him, and lower the hand on the third pace after passing him ; if carrying a cane he will place it smartly under the disengaged arm, cutting away the hand before saluting. (*See* para. 4 above.) During the salute the soldier will look the officer full in the face.

ii. Recruits will be practised in marching two or three together, saluting points being placed on either side. When several men are together, the man nearest to the point will give the time.

They should be practised in saluting officers on the move as well as fixed saluting points.

6. *When sitting.*

A soldier, if sitting when an officer approaches, will stand at *attention*, facing the officer, and salute with the hand ; if two or more men are sitting or standing about the senior warrant officer, N.C.O., or oldest soldier will face the officer, call the whole to *attention*, and alone will salute (as above).

7. *When addressing or delivering a message to an officer.*

When a soldier addresses or delivers a written message to an officer he will halt two paces from him and proceed as in para. 3 above.

8. *When without a cap, &c.*

A soldier without his cap, or when carrying anything other than his arms, will not salute, but will, if standing still, come to *attention* as an officer passes ; if walking, he will turn his head smartly towards the officer in passing him, keeping his arms steady by the side.

9. *When riding a horse.*

A soldier mounted without arms will salute as follows :—

When riding with both hands on the reins a soldier passing an officer will turn his head and eyes in the direction of the officer, without moving his hands.

When holding the reins in one hand only, he will drop the right hand to the full extent of the arm behind the right thigh fingers half closed, back of the hand to the right, and turn his head in the direction of the officer.

10. *When driving or riding on motor or horsed vehicles, or cycling.*

i. A soldier, when riding a bicycle, will turn his head smartly towards an officer in passing him, and will not remove his hands from the handlebar.

ii. A soldier, when riding a motor bicycle or driving a motor vehicle, will not be required to salute when the vehicle is in motion, owing to the danger of taking the eyes off the road. When the vehicle is stationary, he will turn his head smartly towards an officer passing him, but will not remove his hands from the steering wheel or handlebar.

iii. A soldier driving a horsed vehicle will bring his whip to the perpendicular position, with the right hand resting on the thigh, and turn his head smartly towards an officer in passing him.

iv. A soldier riding on a vehicle will turn his head smartly towards an officer when passing him dropping both arms smartly to the side. If seated beside a guard iron, he will grasp it with the nearest hand.

v. A soldier riding a horse of a team in a wagon or limber salutes with the whip as follows :—

(a) Bring the whip to the *recover* (as with a sword).

(b) Pass it over the withers of the off horse, right arm extended, but with the elbow raised and slightly bent, hand in line with the waist, back of the hand up and inclined to the front, all fingers firmly closed on the stock and thong. The driver should hold his body erect, with the shoulders square to the front, and look the officer full in the face. When the salute is finished the whip is brought to the *recover* and then down to the position of *attention*. The salute commences four paces from the officer and finishes four paces after passing him.

A driver when halted or at the trot salutes by coming to *attention* and looking the officer full in the face.

(c) The position of *attention* mounted.

The driver, as soon as he has mounted and adjusted his reins so that he has an even feeling on both horses' mouths, takes the whip out of his leg iron with the right hand, which he passes through the loop at the end of the stock, and places on the right thigh, back up, grasping stock and thong close together, with the elbow a few inches from the body, whip pointing to the horse's left ear.

93. *Saluting with arms*

1. *At the halt.*

A soldier, if halted, will salute as follows :—

- i. If at the *order* when an officer passes he will turn towards the officer and stand to *attention*.

- ii. If at the *slope* when an officer passes he will salute by carrying the right hand smartly to the butt, forefinger just below the small of the butt, forearm horizontal, back of the hand uppermost, fingers straight thumb close to the forefinger. (See Plate XIII.)

The salute will commence three paces before the officer passes the soldier and the hand will be cut away on the third pace after he has passed him.

- iii. A rifleman if at the *shoulder* will salute by tapping the slingsmartly with the left hand, forearm horizontal, back of the hand to the front, fingers straight. The salute will commence and finish as described in ii. above.

2. On the move.

i. When a soldier, other than a rifleman, carrying a rifle, passes an officer, he will do so at the *slope*, and will salute as laid down in para. ii. above ; at the same time turning the head towards the officer saluted and looking him full in the face. He will salute on the third pace before reaching him, and will cut the hand away and turn the head to the front on the third pace after passing him.

ii. A rifleman when passing an officer will do so at the *shoulder* and will salute as laid down in para. 1, iii., above ; at the same time turning the head towards the officer saluted and looking him full in the face. He will salute on the third pace before reaching him and cut the hand away and turn the head to the front on the third pace after passing him.

3. *Delivering messages to or addressing officers.*

i. When a soldier, other than a rifleman carrying a rifle, delivers a written message to or addresses an officer he will do so at the *slope*. Unless the officer is on the move, the soldier will halt two paces from the officer, salute as laid down in para. 1, ii. above, and deliver the message; if no reply is needed or when the reply is received, he will salute as before, turn about and march off in quick time.

ii. A rifleman approaching an officer for a similar purpose will do so at the *shoulder*.

Halting as above, he will salute and come to the *order*. After delivery of his message as above, he will shoulder arms, salute, turn about and march off.

4. *Sentries.*

Sentries when saluting, will halt, turn to the front, and, except when presenting arms, salute as laid down in para. 1, ii. and iii. above. They will always take one pace forward before coming to the *slope* from the *order*.

Sentries in their boxes will salute by coming to *attention*.

See also Chapter XIII.

Other honours and salutes paid by guards and sentries are detailed in King's Regulations.

5. *Officers.*

i. *Without arms.*—An officer without arms will salute with the hand as laid down in Sec. 92, 1.

ii. *Saluting with the sword at the halt, when dismounted.*—The sword being at the *carry*. (Plate XV.)

First motion.—Bring the sword to the *recover*. (Plate XVI.)

Second motion.—Lower the sword until the point is 12 inches from the ground and directed to the front, edge to the left, right arm straight, hand just behind the thigh, thumb flat on the handle of the sword. (Plates XVII and XVIII.)

Third motion.—Bring the sword to the *recover*.

Fourth motion.—Bring the sword to the *carry*.

To salute on coming up to a superior, officers will approach the superior at the *carry* and halt three paces from him before saluting.

iii. *Saluting with the sword when on parade with troops.*—On the command *Present*—*Arms* bring the sword to the *recover* with the first motion of the rifle and lower the sword to the *salute* with the third motion of the rifle.

On the command *Slope*—*Arms* bring the sword to the *recover* with the first motion of the rifle, and to the *carry* with the second motion of the rifle.

When wearing a sword in a scabbard, officers will salute with the hand.

iv. *Saluting with the sword at the halt, when mounted.*—Officers salute as described in para. 5, ii, except that after the *recover* the sword is lowered to the front to the full extent of the arm, blade three inches below the knee, edge to the left, thumb extended in the direction of the point, hand directly under the shoulder. The sword is then brought to the *recover* and down to the *carry*, that is, with the guard resting on the hand, blade perpendicular, edge to the front, the first and second fingers gripping the handle under the resistance piece, the little finger behind the handle to steady it, the wrist resting

on the thigh and the pommel pressed against the inside of it, upper part of the arm close to the body, and the elbow lightly touching the hip.

v. *Saluting with the sword when marching past.*—The salute is to commence on the order *Eyes—Right* (see Sec. 159) or in the case of individual officers at a point “C”, ten yards before arrival in front of the reviewing officer, and finish on the order *Eyes—Front* (see Sec. 159) or in the case of individual officers at a point “D”, ten yards after passing him, the time being taken from the officer on the right.

(a) *When dismounted.*

First motion.—Carry the sword direct to the right to the full extent of the arm, hand as high as the shoulder, back of the hand to the rear, blade perpendicular, edge to the right.

Second motion.—Bring the sword by a circular motion to the *recover*, keeping the elbow as high as the shoulder.

Third motion.—Still keeping the elbow the height of the shoulder, bring the hilt to the right shoulder, hand as high as the elbow; during this motion let the finger nails come in line with the edge of the sword.

Fourth motion.—Lower the sword to the front as in para. 5, ii. (*Second motion*).—There should be no pause between these motions; all should be continued in one graceful movement.

When the salute has finished the sword is brought to the *recover*, carrying it well in front, and to the *carry*, in two deliberate movements, each time as the left foot comes to the ground.

The head is turned towards the reviewing officer on the first motion of the *salute* and is turned to the front again on the first motion of the *recover*.

The first motion of the salute will be made as the left foot comes to the ground, and the salute will be carried over four paces, the fourth motion being given as the right foot comes to the ground.

At the *recover* a pause of one pace is made, and on the following pace the sword is brought to the *carry*, i.e., as the left foot comes to the ground.

(b) *When mounted*.—Mounted officers will similarly commence the salute at 10 yards from the reviewing officer, the four motions being gradually and slowly combined into one easy movement. They will lower the sword to the front to the full extent of the arm, blade three inches below the knee, hand directly under the shoulder.

(c) *Other occasions*.—On occasions other than ceremonial parades, e.g., when the battalion is marching past in column of route, or when on the line of march, officers will not draw swords, but will salute with the hand.

vi. *The salute before dismissing (at the conclusion of a parade)*.—On the command *Fall out the officers*, officers will march up to the officer commanding the parade at the *carry*, halt three paces from him and salute. After saluting, officers will return swords, and form up in rear of the commander until the parade is dismissed.

CHAPTER IV

PLATOON DRILL

94. *Object of platoon drill*

The object of platoon drill is to enable the platoon, when it takes its place in the company, to carry out both by day and night any movement or formation the company commander may direct, whether laid down in this manual or improvised to meet the circumstances of the moment. The sections of each platoon must be exercised previously in all the movements of squad drill, so as to fit them to take their place in their platoon.

95. *General rules*

1. The platoon (Plate XIX) may be formed as follows :—
 - i. In line (as in squad drill). Fig. 1.
 - ii. In column of fours, or in file (as in squad drill). Figs. 5 and 4.
 - iii. In line of sections in fours, file or deployed. Fig. 2.
 - iv. In column of sections. Fig. 3.
 - v. In column of route. (*See* Plate XXI.)

2. The platoon commander and the platoon serjeant, when the platoon is acting alone, or at a distance from other platoons, will place themselves where they can best exercise

supervision. The normal position of commanders and supernumeraries in line and in column of route is shown on Plates XIX, Fig. 1 and XXI (A company in column of route).

3. When a platoon is in line of sections of fours, section commanders will lead their sections. In all other movements in fours, except where otherwise laid down, commanders and supernumeraries retain the relative positions they occupied before fours were formed.

4. In column of route the left will always direct, with the following exceptions:—

- i. In countries where the “off side” rule of the road obtains. (*See Sec. 132, 2.*)
 - ii. When the right is the pivot flank.
 - iii. When increasing frontage on the left.
- In the above cases the right will direct.

5. The following will act as guides:—

- i. When a platoon is in line or in column of sections the section commander on the directing flank acts as guide, and is responsible for the maintenance of direction.
- ii. In column of route, fours or in file the section commander on the directing flank.
- iii. In line of sections in fours or file, the leading man on the inner flank of the directing section will be responsible for direction, and the leading man on the inner flank of each of the other units for the correct interval.

6—i. In platoon drill, dressing will be taken up by each man on completion of each movement, as in Sec. 39, 2. In column formations the right (or left) hand man upon whom the dressing of the section depends will, on the completion of each movement, immediately take up his dressing and distance from the section of formation, so that he will be in the correct position and that the remainder of the section may take up their dressing on him.

ii. For ceremonial purposes, however, the platoon when in line should be practised in dressing by word of command. On the command *Right (or Left)—Dress* by the platoon commander, the platoon serjeant will move out a distance of five paces from the flank of his platoon in quick time, and face the flank in line with the front rank. The men will act as in Sec. 39, 1, and as soon as the dressing is correct, the platoon serjeant will give the command *Eyes—Front* and fall in.

7. Before a movement in close order is made, arms will be sloped. In rifle regiments, which drill in close order at the trail, the men will trail arms on the command *Quick* or *Double March*, and will halt, come to the *Order*, and stand at ease on the command or signal *Halt*.

8. Units will frequently be practised in reassembling when dispersed.

9. When a supernumerary requires to pass through the ranks the two files immediately opposite him will make way on the command *Make-Way*. If he is coming from the front they will take a pace to the rear, and a side pace outwards; if

from the rear, a pace forward and a side pace outwards. They will resume their positions as soon as the supernumerary has passed through.

10. When a unit retires it may do so with its ranks changed or unchanged; in the latter case the supernumerary rank retains its position and in the former case it takes up its new position by the outer flanks (*see* Sec. 42, 2).

11. When a unit is required to halt on reaching a new alignment necessitated by a change of front or is required to halt as soon as a change of formation has been completed, the command *At the Halt* will be prefixed to the cautionary order given; each man will then halt and take up his dressing on reaching the new alignment.

Similarly, when a change of formation is initiated when a unit is already on the move, the command *Quick—March* is unnecessary and should be omitted from the orders given.

12. Many movements used in company drill can be carried out as platoon drill by substituting the word *platoon* for *company* and *section* for *platoon*.

13. In the detail of platoon drill the title of the movement is shown in *italics* and is followed by the platoon commander's commands in **thick type**; the latter, when referred to in the detail, are printed in *italics*.

When commands are given by section commanders it is so stated in the detail.

96. Forming up, inspection, telling off and proving a platoon

Unless otherwise ordered the platoon will fall in for inspection by its commander, in line. The inspection should usually be carried out at the *order* as follows :—

- i. { Platoon—Attention. Fix—Bayonets.
Open Order—March. } Given by
platoon
serjeant.

The rear rank will step back and dress as in Sec. 39, 2.

The appointments, clothing, &c., will then be inspected by the platoon commander.

- ii. { Unfix—Bayonets.
For Inspection Post—Arms.
Examine—Arms. (If required.)
- Arms will then be inspected as in Secs. 60 and 61.
- iii. { Platoon—Attention. Close Order—March.
By Sections—Number. Form—Fours.
Form—Two Deep. About—Turn.
Form—Fours.
Form—Two Deep. About—Turn, &c.
- Given by platoon commander.

To avoid unnecessary loss of road space in column of route when sections are numerically weak, the platoon or two sections may be numbered off and proved together for the purpose of forming fours. This numbering must not preclude sections from being separated under their own leaders for movements in line of sections in file or single file, or for any individual action required.

97. *A platoon in line forming a line of sections in fours or file moving in the same direction*

Advance in Fours (or File) from the Right of Sections.
Form Fours—Right (or Right—Turn). Sections,
Left—Wheel. Quick—March.

The platoon will move as directed, section commanders placing themselves two paces in front of the leading four or file of their respective sections. A section of direction will be named.

i. In order to re-form line the command will be *On the Left, Form—Sections*, on which the men will act as in squad drill. Formation will be made on the leading guides.

ii. When a line of sections in fours or file is on the march the interval may be increased or diminished on the command *From (or On) No. ... , Open (or Close) to — Paces Interval, Remainder, Double—March*. Section commanders will give the caution *Break into Quick Time*, followed by the command *Quick—March* on arriving at the required interval.

98. *A platoon in column of fours forming a line of sections in fours or file, moving in the same direction*

1. On the Left, Form Line of Sections in Fours (or File),
at ... Paces Interval, Remainder Double—March.

If file has been ordered, the whole will first form two deep. The leading section will continue to lead on in quick time, and the remainder will be led, in double time, by the shortest route to the positions at the named interval, where their commanders will give *Break into Quick Time, Quick—March*, taking post two paces in front of their leading four or file.

2. At the Halt on the Left Form Line of Sections in Fours (or File) At Column Interval. Remainder Left In—cline.

The leading section will be halted by its commander, and the remainder, on arriving at the required interval, will receive from their section commanders, *No.... Section, Right In—cline*, and when in the alignment, *No.... Section—Halt*.

i. When it is desired to move sections into other than column intervals the caution will be *At ... paces interval*.

ii. The movements in Secs. 97 and 98 may also be carried out in single file.

99. *Extended order movements*

1. *General instructions*.—Drill in extended order movements should be practised. The rifle will normally be carried at the *trail* when moving in extended order in line and at the *slope* when in fours or file. Correct dressing and keeping step are not required, but an approximate line should be kept; otherwise when extended men may mask one another's fire. Commanders should place themselves where they can best supervise their commands. It should be explained that as extensions are usually made in order to develop fire or avoid loss, they are normally carried out at the double. An extended line is closed only when under cover or when not under fire; closing is therefore carried out in quick time unless it is desired to close on the move. Unless otherwise ordered, men extend and close from or to the centre file, which should be named.

In some circumstances it may be advisable that the extension should be made between pairs and not between single

men. In this case the rear rank man forms on the left of and remains with his front rank man, the latter being responsible for gaining and keeping the extension ordered.

2. The cautions before commencing drill are as follows :—

No. ... Centre File and File of Direction. The Objective is

The front rank man of the given file will prove by raising the disengaged arm. If it is required to march by a flank, the front rank man of the file on that flank will prove.

3. *A unit in line extending from the halt to the halt.*

To ... Paces, Extend.

The front rank man of the centre file will stand fast. The remainder will turn outwards and extend, or increase their extensions, moving in double time. The rear rank men will form on the left of their front rank men. Each man is responsible that the given number of paces separate him from the man who is next to him and nearer to the centre.

i. If it is required to extend to a flank, or from a named file, the above command will be preceded by the caution *To the Right* (or *Left*), or *From No. ...*

ii. When extending on the move, the front rank man of the file from which the extension is being made will continue to advance in quick time, the remainder acting as above.

iii. During a more advanced stage of instruction, rough-and-ready expedients for extending will be practised, in order to form a firing line quickly in any direction from any formation,

4. *A unit marching in fours extending to a flank.*

To the Right (or Left), to ... Paces, Extend.

The whole will form two deep.

i. If the extension is to the right, the left man of the leading file will continue to advance, the other man of the file forming up on his right at the number of paces ordered. The remainder will make a partial turn in the required direction, and will double into their positions. The left man of each file will form on the left of the other man of the same file. As each man reaches his position he will break into quick time and continue to advance in the original direction.

ii. If the extension is to the left, the right man of the leading file will continue to advance and the right man of each file will form on the right of the other man of the same file as above.

iii. Should it be required to form in a direction oblique to the line of advance, the words *Halt (Quarter or Three-quarter) Right (or Left)* will precede the commands given before.

5. *An extended line closing.*

Close ; or To ... Paces, Close.

The men will close on the centre, taking up their original positions in two ranks, or will decrease their extensions to the given number of paces. The front rank man of the centre file will stand fast, the remainder moving in quick time.

i. If it is desired to close or decrease extensions towards a flank or on a named file, the above command will be preceded by the caution *On the Right (or Left), or On No.*

ii. If the command is preceded by the caution *At the halt*, the centre (right or left-hand) man will halt, the remainder acting as above, and halting as they reach their places.

iii. If it is desired to close on the move, the front rank man of the centre file will continue to advance in quick time, the remainder doubling to their places, and resuming quick time on arrival.

6. The platoon commander should also practise scattering from column of route on a road into section groups, and advancing with his sections in battle formation as described in Sec. 127.

Sections should also be practised in following their commanders over rough country in irregular formations but under control, in extending to open fire and in the selection of the best fire positions. In these movements formal orders can be replaced by signals or short instructions. They should be accustomed to work on quick instructions from the section commander, *e.g.*, *Follow me, No. ... Section; Across that bridge and line the bank; Two men out in front to watch that farm; extend to my right, &c.*; but such instructions should be firm and simple. They require just as much discipline on the part of the men and control on the part of the leader as close order drill.

It is important, therefore, that, as far as possible, all changes of formation should be carried out as drill movements.

100. *Formations applicable to movements in the field*

Plate III, Vol. II, 1926, shows suitable formations for a platoon in the attack. **They are only given as a guide,** and must be modified to suit varying circumstances, such as

the nature of the ground, strength of the opposition, &c. (see Sec. 15, 4, Vol. II, 1926). These formations must be practised so that all ranks may be familiar with them.

Section commanders must also be accustomed to act on a signal from their platoon commander, so that in case of emergency, the required formation may be adopted without confusion or delay. The different formations in which sections may advance are described in Section Leading, and Sec. 16, Vol. II, 1926.

CHAPTER V

COMPANY DRILL

101. *Object of company drill*

The object of company drill is to train the four platoons to work together as parts of the same tactical unit, and to acquire flexibility and the power of rapid manœuvre within the company.

102. *General rules*

1. The company may be formed as follows :—

- i. In line. (Plate XX, Fig. 1.)
- ii. In close column of platoons. (Plate XX, Fig. 3.)
- iii. In column of platoons. (Plate XX, Fig. 2.)
- iv. In column of fours or in file.
- v. In line of platoons or sections in fours, file or extended.
- vi. In column of route. (Plate XXI.)

2. The positions of all commanders and supernumeraries in various formations are shown in Plates XX and XXI, in column of fours or in file they retain their positions as shown in Plate XX, Fig. 1, but, during drill and manœuvre, the company commander and second in command will place themselves where they can best exercise supervision.

The positions of the company serjeant-major and the company quarter-master-serjeant, as shown in Plate XXII, remain the same, whether the company is by the right or by the left.

3. *Guides*.—The following will act as guides :—

- i. In line The section commander on the directing flank.
- ii. In column, or close column of platoons. The four section commanders on the directing flank.
- iii. In line of platoons in fours or file. The leading section commander on the inner flank of the platoon of direction. The leading section commanders of other platoons maintain intervals by changing over to flank of direction.
- iv. In column of fours. When moving to the right the left will direct ; when moving to the left, the right will direct, section commanders being responsible for direction.
- v. In column of route. The left will direct (except in countries where the "off side" rule of the road obtains as in Sec. 132, 2). Section commanders being responsible for direction.

4. In action or in high wind it will often be impossible for words of command to be heard. The company commander should therefore frequently practise his command in working by signal.

5. The general rules for platoon drill enumerated in Sec. 95, apply equally to company drill where applicable.

6. Unless otherwise ordered, a company will fall in in close column of platoons, and will be inspected and proved as in Sec. 96.

7. A company in line, column or close column will march by the right, except when increasing frontage on the right or when the left is the pivot flank.

8. In company drill each man will take up his dressing on the completion of each movement as in Sec. 39, 2. **For ceremonial purposes**, however, the company should be practised in dressing by word of command.

The following is the procedure when the command *Right* (or *Left*)—*Dress* is given by the company commander.

In line the company serjeant-major will dress the whole company and when completed give the command *Eyes—Front*.

In column or close column, on the command *Right* (or *Left*)—*Dress* each platoon serjeant will move out to a distance of five paces from the inner flank of his platoon, in quick time, and face the flank, in line with the front rank.

The company serjeant-major will cover off the guides and will then give the command *Steady*, whereupon the platoon serjeants will complete the dressing of their platoons, commencing from the platoon of formation and give the command *Eyes—Front*. When the rear platoon has received this order, the company serjeant-major and platoon serjeants will resume their original positions in quick time taking the time from the word *front*.

If the platoon serjeant is not available, the flank section commander will dress the platoon.

9. When the company is required to halt as soon as a change of formation has been completed the command will be preceded by the caution *At the Halt*. Similarly, when a change of formation is initiated when a unit is already on the move, the command *Quick—March* is unnecessary and should be omitted from the orders given.

10. When cautions or commands are given for formations to or from one flank only the same rule applies when forming to or from the other flank.

11. Movements and formations for which detail is given in fours can also be made in file or single file.

12. Echelon movements may be carried out as in Sec. 118.

13. When it is desirable to *Advance* (or *Retire*) in column of route this caution should precede all other commands.

14. When companies are numerically strong movement to the flank will be made in fours instead of in file.

15. In the detail of company drill the title of the movement is shown in *italics*, and is followed by the company commander's commands in **thick type**. The detail of the movement then follows, in which orders to be given by platoon commanders are printed in *italics*. The company commander's cautions or words of command, when referred to in the detail, are printed in SMALL CAPITALS.

103. *A company in close column of platoons falling in with or without the drum**

1. On the command *Fall in* from the company serjeant-major, the drummer will beat a double flam, upon which the

* Guards, guard of honour and other ceremonial parades can be formed up on similar lines, except that men will take up their dressing on the command *Right* (or *Left*)—*Dress*.

right section commanders of each platoon will come to attention and take one pace forward (at the order). They will be covered off by the company serjeant-major, who then gives the command *Steady*. After a pause of four seconds the drummer will beat a flam, upon which the company will come to attention. The drummer will count a pause of two seconds and will then beat another flam, when the company will take one pace to the front. After a further pause of two seconds the drummer will beat a roll when the company will take up their dressing and remain looking to the right. When the whole of the company is steady the drum will cease to roll, finishing up with a sharp tap on the drum, when the company will turn their heads and eyes sharply to the front. The senior officer on parade then gives *Company Stand at—Ease, Call the Roll*, upon which the officers will join and inspect their platoons.

2. When falling in without the drum the company serjeant-major will give the command *Fall in*, upon which the right section commanders of each platoon will take one pace forward (at the order). They will be covered off by the company serjeant-major who will then give the command *Steady*. Upon this command the company will come to attention, take a pace forward and, after a pause, will take up their dressing as in Sec. 39, 2.

On completion of the dressing the senior officer will give the command *Stand at—Ease. Call the Roll*, upon which the officers will join and inspect their platoons.

3. When a company falls in, with the drum, as part of a battalion, the right section commanders will, after taking

the pace forward, turn to their right and take up their covering. On the command *Steady*, from the regimental serjeant-major, they will turn to their left and the dressing will be completed as above.

104. *A company when halted changing ranks*

About—Turn.

The whole will turn about except officers and supernumeraries, who will regain their positions by passing round the flanks or through the ranks of the company, section commanders making way for them on the command *Make way*, by placing themselves between the files on their right or left, and afterwards aligning themselves with the front rank.

i. If ranks are changed on the march, section commanders will make way by checking the pace slightly and inclining outwards.

ii. If it is desired to turn about without changing ranks, the command ABOUT—TURN will be preceded by the caution THE COMPANY WILL RETIRE and in order to resume the original direction THE COMPANY WILL ADVANCE, in which case officers and supernumeraries will turn about but will not change their position (*see* Sec. 42, 2).

105. *Close column movements*

1. *A close column when halted changing direction.*

Change direction Right. Right—Wheel.

The company, except the leading platoon, will make a partial turn to the left; the leading platoon will not turn, but will look to the right.

Quick—March.

Each man will move round on the circumference of a circle, of which the right of the leading platoon is the centre. The outer flank will direct, but when platoons are of unequal strength they will maintain the same relative positions as they held before the wheel. The second in command will superintend the wheel on the left flank, the company serjeant-major on the right, moving out after the command *Wheel*, the former must, in regulating the pace, watch the left guide of the rear platoon, who will continue to march at a full pace throughout, and on whose movement the march of every man in the company should be made to depend.

When the company has circled round to the required angle, the command **FOR—WARD, MARK—TIME** or **HALT** will be given, on which all will at once turn in the required direction.

i. When wheeling to the left, it will be the duty of the company serjeant-major to watch the right guide of the rear platoon as above.

ii. A close column moving in fours will wheel as above, the leading four of each platoon wheeling in the same manner as the leading platoon above, the fours in rear making a partial turn outwards, and following round after the leading fours.

2. A close column when halted forming column of fours.

i. Advance (or Retire) in Column of Fours from the Right. Form Fours—Right.

The commander of the leading (or rear) platoon will give *No. ... Platoon, Left (or Right)—Wheel. Quick—March*, and each platoon commander will act similarly in time to gain his place in column of fours.

**ii. Move to the Right (or Left) in Column of Fours.
Form Fours—Right (or Left).**

The commander of the leading (or rear) platoon will give *No. ... Platoon, Quick—March*, and each remaining platoon commander will give *No. ... Platoon, Left (or Right)—Wheel. Quick—March* in time to gain his place in column of fours.

(a) Unless otherwise ordered a company will move off from the right of the leading platoon, or from the left of the rear platoon.

(b) A company can be marched off from any platoon as follows: **ADVANCE (OR RETIRE), &C., IN COLUMN OF FOURS IN THE FOLLOWING ORDER, NO. 1, NO. 2, NO. 3, NO. 4 PLATOON.**

3. A close column when halted moving to a flank in fours.

Move to the Right (or Left) in Fours. Form Fours—Right (or Left). Quick—March.

The platoon on the right or left will direct unless any other platoon is detailed.

4. A close column when halted forming line facing in the same direction.

i. On the Left, Form—Line. Remainder, Left—Turn. Quick—March.

The leading platoon will stand fast. The remainder will be led by their guides by the shortest route to the spot where their inner flank will rest. Each platoon will then wheel parallel to the alignment, and when opposite to its place in line will be halted and turned to the right by its commander.

- ii. **Line—Outwards, One (or Two) Platoon(s) to the Right, Remainder, Form—Fours, Outwards. Quick—March.**

The movement will be made on the above principles. The platoon or platoons next in succession from the front will move to the named flank. Dressing will be on the platoon of formation.

When line has been formed the company commander will name a flank of direction.

5. *A close column on the march forming line at the halt, facing a flank.*

By the Left, At the Halt, Facing Left, Form—Line.

The commander of the rear platoon will at once give *At the Halt, Left—Form*. Each of the other commanders will form his platoon into line in like manner when it arrives at column distance from the platoon next in rear.

6. *Advancing or retiring in column from close column.*

i. Advance in—Column.

The commander of the leading platoon will give *No. ... Platoon will Advance, By the Right, Quick—March*, and the remaining platoons will be similarly marched off when the platoon next in front has reached column distance.

ii. Retire in—Column.

Platoon commanders will turn about and march their platoons in succession at column distance, giving the command *No.... Platoon will Retire. About—Turn. By the Left. Quick—March*.

7. *A column on the march closing to close column.*

**Form Close Column (or Close Column at ... Paces).
Remainder Double—March.**

The leading platoon will continue to advance in quick time, the remainder taking up the quick time as they gain correct distance.

If the command is **AT THE HALT FORM CLOSE—COLUMN (OR CLOSE COLUMN AT ... PACES)** the leading platoon will at once be halted by its commander. The remainder will be halted successively on reaching their positions in close column.

8. *A column when halted closing to close column.*

Close Column on No.... Platoon. Remainder, Quick—March.

The leading platoon will stand fast. The remainder will step off and will be halted by their commanders on reaching their positions in close column.

i. If it is required to form close column on any but the leading platoon the command will be **CLOSE COLUMN ON No.... PLATOON. PLATOON(S) IN FRONT WILL RETIRE. ABOUT—TURN. REMAINDER QUICK—MARCH.**

The named platoon will stand fast. Platoon(s) in front will turn about. All except the named platoon will step off and will be halted by their commanders on reaching their positions in close column. Platoon(s) in front will be turned about by their commanders.

ii. If it is required to form on the rear platoon the command will be **CLOSE COLUMN ON No.... PLATOON. REMAINDER**

WILL RETIRE. ABOUT—TURN. QUICK—MARCH. The movement will be carried out as above.

9. *A close column moving to a flank in fours forming line at the halt.*

At the Halt, Facing Left (or Right) Form—Line.

The commander of the left (or right) platoon will give *No.... Platoon—Halt. Left (or Right)—Turn.*

The remaining platoons will be led by their guides by the shortest route into their positions in line and will be turned to the left (or right) by order of their commanders.

106. Column movements

1. *A column on the march changing direction.*

Change Direction—Right.

The commander of the leading platoon will give the command *No....Platoon, Right—Form*, and, when the platoon is formed in the new direction, *For—ward*. The remaining platoons, on arriving at the same point, will be formed successively in a similar manner.

i. Before changing direction *left* a column should normally be ordered to march by the left.

ii. A column can similarly change direction half (quarter or three-quarter) right.

2. *A column when halted forming column of fours.*

Advance in Fours from the Right. Form Fours—Right. Platoons Left—Wheel, Quick—March.

Each platoon will move in the required direction, forming column of fours.

When a column is on the march, platoons may, if desired, advance in fours in succession. On the caution **IN SUCCESSION ADVANCE IN FOURS FROM THE RIGHT**, the commander of the leading platoon will form fours right and wheel to the left. On arriving at the same point the commander of each succeeding platoon will act in a similar manner.

3. *A column on the march forming line facing in the same direction.*

On the Left. Form — Line. Remainder, Left In—cline. Double—March.

The leading platoon will continue to advance in quick time, dressing by the right. When each platoon is immediately in rear of its position in line, it will receive from its commander *No ... Platoon. Right In—cline* and on reaching the alignment *Break into quick time. Quick—March*. Dressing will be by the right in each case.

i. If the company is halted the command **QUICK—MARCH** will be given instead of **DOUBLE—MARCH**. The leading platoon will stand fast, the remainder will act as in squad drill and on reaching the alignment the command *Halt* instead of *Break into quick time. Quick—March* will be given.

ii. If the command **FORM FOURS—LEFT** instead of **LEFT IN—CLINE** is given the movement will be carried out as described in Sec. 105, 4, i.

iii. Line may similarly be formed outwards, the words of command being as in Sec. 105, 4, ii.

iv. In the case of i, ii, and iii, the movement will be carried out at the halt.

4. *A column when halted forming line facing a flank and moving forward.*

By the Left. Into Line. Platoons Left—Form. Quick—March.

The men will act as in squad drill, the left guide of each platoon acting, on the word **FORM**, as the pivot man of a squad.

When line is formed the company commander will give **FOR—WARD. BY THE LEFT.**

107. *Line movements*

1. *A line when halted forming column (or close column) facing in the same direction.*

i. **On the Right. Form Column (or Close Column) of Platoons. Remainder, Form Fours — Right. Quick—March.**

The platoon on the right will stand fast. The remainder will be led by their guides by the shortest route to their positions in column (or close column), where they will receive from their commanders *No. ... Platoon—Halt. Left—Turn.* On the command *Halt*, the right guides will at once turn to their left and take up their covering and distance from the right guide of the platoon in front, the platoons dressing by the right as soon as they have turned to the left.

- ii. **On No. ... Platoon. Form Close Column (or Column) of Platoons. Remainder. Form—Fours. Inwards. Quick—March.**

This movement may also be done on either of the centre platoons. In this case the remaining platoons will move into their positions left arm to left arm.

2. *A line when halted advancing in column of platoons.*

Advance in Column of Platoons from the Right (or Left). Remainder, Form Fours—Right. Quick—March.

The right (or left) platoon will advance. The remainder will act as in squad drill, mark time two paces and then lead on. When the guide of each platoon is in rear of the centre of the preceding platoon, the commander will give *No. ... Platoon. Left In—cline*, and on arriving in column of platoons again *Left In—cline*.

3. *A line when halted forming column facing a flank at the halt.*

At the Halt. Into Column. Platoons. Right—Form. Quick—March.

The men will act as in squad drill, the right guide of each platoon acting as the pivot man of a squad.

4. *A line forming a line of platoons in fours facing in the same direction.*

Advance in Fours from the Right of Platoons. Form Fours—Right. Platoons, Left—Wheel, Quick—March. The Platoon on the Right (or Left) will direct.

The movement will be made as directed, platoon commanders placing themselves two paces in front of the leading

four of their respective platoons ; section commanders maintaining the relative positions they occupied before fours were formed.

Note.—A line of sections in fours or file can also be formed as in Sec. 97.

108. *Movements from column of fours*

1. *A column of fours forming forward into column of platoons.*

The Company will form Column of Platoons. On the Left. Form—Platoons.

The men will act as in squad drill. Formation will be made on the leading guide of each platoon. When column has been formed the company commander will give **FOR—WARD. BY THE RIGHT.**

A column of fours may, if desired, increase frontage by platoons in succession, in which case the company commander will give the caution **THE COMPANY WILL FORM COLUMN OF PLATOONS IN SUCCESSION ON THE LEFT. FORM—PLATOONS.** The commander of the leading platoon will at once give *No. ... Platoon. On the Left. Form—Platoon*, followed by *For—ward*, and on reaching the same point the remaining commanders will act in a similar manner.

2. *A column of fours forming forward into close column of platoons at the halt.*

At the Halt. On the left. Form Close Columns of Platoons.

The commander of the leading platoon will at once give *No. ... Platoon. At the Halt. On the Left. Form—Platoon.*

The commanders of the remaining platoons on arriving at close column distance will act in similar manner.

3. *A column of fours forming column (or close column) of platoons at the halt facing a flank.*

At the Halt. Facing Left. Form Column (or Close Column) of Platoons.

The commander of the leading platoon will halt his unit and turn it to the left by giving, *No. ... Platoon. Halt. Left—Turn.* The remainder will be led by their guides by the shortest route to their positions in column (or close column), where they will receive the command *No. ... Platoon. Halt. Left—Turn.* On the word *Halt*, the right guides will at once turn to their left and take up their covering and distance from the right guide of the platoon in front.

4. *A column of fours forming column facing a flank and moving forward.*

Facing Left, Advance in Column of Platoons.

The commander of the leading platoon will give *No. ... Platoon. Left—Turn.* The remainder will mark time four paces and then lead on in fours.

Each platoon commander, when the leading guide of his platoon is in rear of the centre of the preceding platoon, will give *Left In—cline*, and when in column, again *Left In—cline*.

5. *A column of fours forming a line of platoons in fours, moving in the same direction.*

On the left, Form Line of Platoons in Fours at ... Paces Interval. Remainder, Double—March.

The leading platoon will continue to move forward in quick time. The remainder will be led by their guides by the shortest route to their positions in the alignment at the named interval, where platoon commanders will give the command *No.... Platoon. Break into quick time. Quick—March*, taking post two paces in front of the leading four of their platoons.

i. When companies are numerically strong, it will be found more convenient to perform this movement at the halt, the advance being continued after the line of platoons has been formed.

When performed at the halt the same procedure as laid down in Sec. 98, 2, will be adopted, the word *Platoon* being substituted for *Section*.

ii. A line of sections in fours or file can similarly be formed, section commanders taking post two paces in front of the centre of their leading four or file.

iii. When a line of platoons in fours (or file) is on the march the interval may be increased or diminished on the command. **FROM (or ON) NO. ... OPEN (or CLOSE) TO ... PACES INTERVAL. REMAINDER, BREAK INTO DOUBLE TIME, DOUBLE—MARCH.** Platoon commanders giving *Break into Quick Time, Quick—March* on arriving at required interval.

109. Movements in line, or lines, of small columns from any formation

1. These movements are of great importance, as they

form the link between close order drill and movements in battle.

2. Constant practice is to be given in rapidly changing from any formation into a line or lines of platoons in fours or file, at varying intervals and distances.

From these formations lines of sections in file or single file on irregular frontages should be formed.

3. The rapidity of such movements will depend on the clearness and completeness of the explanations and orders of the company commander who will explain beforehand to his platoon commanders the nature of the movement and the objective allotted to each platoon. Platoons will then move off to the required distances and will assume the necessary formations, section commanders' instructions being on the lines laid down in Sec. 99, 6.

4. In movements of this nature the number of executive words of command should be reduced to a minimum, and each unit should move to its place in the new formation by the shortest route and in the simplest manner, on the company commander's order MOVE or pre-arranged signal. Units will subsequently be guided only by such methods of control as could be exercised in battle. Companies will be practised in shaking out from column of route as described in Sec. 127. Platoons should also be trained to shake out into small columns by signal; this will prevent delay and confusion in sudden emergencies when there is no time for explanations and instructions.

110. *Formations applicable to movements in the field*

Other drill movements besides those detailed in Secs. 105-109 may be practised. The principles as regards words of

command, cautions, and formations, given in the above sections will be adhered to.

Plate II, Vol. II, 1926, shows four suitable formations for a company in the attack. **They are only given as a guide,** and must be modified to suit varying circumstances, such as the nature of the ground, strength of the opposition, &c. (*see* Sec. 14, 3, Vol. II, 1926). These formations must be practised so that all ranks may be familiar with them.

111. *Dismissing*

The officers will first be ordered to fall out, when they will move in quick time to the commander of the parade, form up in line, salute and form up behind him till the company is dismissed.

The company will then be dismissed as in Sec. 47.

CHAPTER VI

BATTALION DRILL

112. *Preliminary remarks*

1. Battalion drill is the combination of companies moving as in company drill. The aim of a battalion commander must be to obtain cohesion without rigidity, so that his companies may be able either to act as one body on his command or signal, or to move rapidly and, if necessary, silently into any formation required.

A suitable formation of assembly for a battalion is mass (*see* Plate XXII), or such modification of mass as may be dictated by the ground, the intervals and distances and the relative positions of the companies being regulated according to circumstances. Mass, however, is not a tactical formation, as it forms a vulnerable target for aircraft. It should not, therefore, be employed in the vicinity of the battlefield or where acting against an enemy who possesses aircraft. But it is a convenient formation for purposes of parading for field work, inspection and for the issue of orders and instructions before moving off in column of route (*see* Plate XXIII), or in battle formation.

Battalion drill, except for ceremonial occasions (*see* Chapter XI) will, therefore, usually consist of movements from and into mass, and in lines of platoons in fours or other convenient formation at varying intervals and distances, and from mass into columns of fours and *vice versa*. Company commanders will be practised in carrying out their commander's orders rapidly and silently, in the manner described in Sec. 109, and in meeting unexpected emergencies as the situation may

require. The guiding principle is that though, to secure precision in close order drill, executive commands must be given by platoon as well as company commanders, movements in the field may under certain conditions be carried out on the word MOVE or pre-arranged signal. In these movements words of command and shouting as in close order drill must be dispensed with. Section, platoon and company commanders will be practised in giving quick and clear instructions and explanations beforehand. Afterwards all movements must be carried out as rapidly and silently as possible. A system of signals is laid down in Chapters VII and VIII, so that companies, platoons, &c., may adopt suitable formations to meet the situation when the issue of orders and instructions is impossible, or might cause casualties, e.g., a battalion in column of route suddenly coming under shell fire, and compelled to adopt a more open formation.

Certain other formations and movements will be found useful under various conditions, as well as necessary for the proper carrying out of ceremonial parades and reviews, and these are accordingly included here.

113. *General rules*

1. For battalion drill a battalion will usually form up in mass, or close column of companies.

2. In mass, when platoons are of unequal strength, the inner flank of each company will be at five paces interval from the outer flank of the strongest platoon of the company next to it.

3. Dressing will be carried out on the principles as laid down in Sec. 102, 8, where applicable; the adjutant and regimental serjeant-major assisting generally.

4. When the battalion is required to halt as soon as a change of formation has been completed, the command will be preceded by the caution *At the Halt*. Similarly, when a change of formation is initiated when a unit is already on the move, the command *Quick—March* is unnecessary and should be omitted from the orders given.

5. The battalion commander will place himself where he can best exercise supervision ; the adjutant will usually accompany him.

The normal positions of officers and warrant officers, and of battalion headquarter wing in mass, are shown on Plate XXII.

6. After forming mass on the left, the right will be named as the directing flank, and *vice versa*.

7. In the detail of battalion drill the title of the movement is shown in *italics* and is followed by the battalion commander's commands in **thick type** ; the latter when referred to in the detail, are printed in SMALL CAPITALS.

When commands are given by company and platoon commanders it is so stated in the detail.

114. *Movements from and into mass*

1. *A mass advancing.*

The Battalion will Advance, Quick—March.

The men will move as in squad drill. The right will direct unless otherwise ordered.

2. *A mass moving to a flank in lines of platoons in fours.*

Move to the Right in Fours, Form Fours—Right. Quick—March.

The men will move as in squad drill, preserving the intervals

and distances between platoons and companies. The left will direct unless otherwise ordered, each leading four of the outer platoons of each company dressing by the leading four of the platoon on its left. From this formation the companies can be opened out to varying distances and intervals, with irregular frontages, as the battalion commander may direct.

3. *A mass moving off in column of fours.*

Advance (or Retire) in Fours from the Right (or Left)
No. ... Company leading.

The company commander of the named company will give : *No. ... Company. Advance (or Retire) in fours from the Right (or Left) Form Fours—Right (or Left).* The commander of the leading (or rear) platoon will then give *No. ... Platoon. Left (or Right)—Wheel. Quick—March,* and the remaining platoons of the company will be marched off by their commanders in succession in the same way. The remaining companies will successively be marched off in the same way in time to follow the preceding company.

4. *A column of fours forming mass facing in the same direction*
At the Halt, on the Left, Form—Mass.

The commander of the leading company will at once give the caution *No. ... Company. At the Halt. On the left. Form close column of platoons.* The leading platoon commander then gives *No. ... Platoon. At the halt. On the Left. Form—Platoon.* Each platoon commander of the leading company will act similarly when his leading guide reaches close column distance from the platoon in front. The remaining companies

will disengage to the left, and will be led to their respective positions in mass, where close column of platoons will be similarly formed.

Mass can similarly be formed on the right.

5. *A column of fours forming mass facing a flank.*

At the Halt, Facing Left, Form—Mass.

The commander of the leading company will at once give the caution *No. ... Company. At the halt. Facing left. Form close column of Platoons.* The leading platoon commander then gives *No. ... Platoon—Halt. Left—Turn.* The remaining platoons of the leading company will be led by the shortest route to their position in close column of platoons, where they will receive a similar command.

As the leading platoon of each succeeding company arrives at the correct interval from the preceding company, the company and platoon commanders will act in a similar manner and close column of platoons will be formed.

Any number of lines of platoons in fours can be formed from column of fours on the above principle, the platoon commander's command *Left—Turn* being omitted. The battalion commander's cautions will be **AT THE HALT, ON THE LEFT, LINE (or LINES) OF PLATOONS IN FOURS, AT ... PACES INTERVAL (AND ... PACES DISTANCE).**

6. *A mass forming line facing in the same direction.*

On the Left (or Right). Form Line. Remainder, Form Fours—Right (or Left). Quick—March.

The leading platoon of the left (or right) company will stand fast. The remainder will form fours—right (or left)

and move off. When the leading platoons of the remaining three companies reach their positions in line the company commander will give the command *At the Halt. Facing Left* (or *Right*). *Form—Line*, when the company will act as in Sec. 105, 9.

7. *A line when halted forming mass facing in the same direction.*

On the Right (or **Left**) **Form Mass. Remainder, Form Fours—Right** (or **Left**), **Quick—March.**

On the battalion commander's command **QUICK—MARCH**, the right (or left) platoon will stand fast and the remaining platoons of this company will be led by their guides by the shortest route to their position in mass and will be halted and turned to the front by their commanders. The other three companies will also move on the battalion commander's command **QUICK—MARCH**, and will adopt mass formation on the company commander's giving the order *At the Halt. Facing Left* (or *Right*), *Form Close Column of Platoons.*

8. *A mass when halted changing direction.*

Change direction Right, Right—Wheel.

The battalion except the leading platoon of each company will make a left incline. Leading platoons will look to the right.

Quick—March.

The movements will be completed as in Company Drill, Sec. 105, 1.

The second in command will supervise the wheel on the right flank and the adjutant on the left flank. When the battalion has wheeled to the required angle the command

MARK—TIME, FOR—WARD or HALT will be given on which all will turn to their front in the new direction and take up their dressing.

115. *Close column and column movements*

1. *A close column when halted changing direction.*

Change direction Right, Right—Wheel.

The battalion except the leading company will make a left incline. The leading company will look to the right.

Quick—March.

The movement will be completed as in Sec. 114, 8, and Company Drill, Sec. 105, 1.

A close column moving in fours will wheel as above, the battalion, except the leading section of fours in each company, making a left incline and the leading section of fours looking to the right.

2. *A close column advancing (or retiring) in column of fours.*

In succession Advance (or Retire) in fours from the Right (or Left) of Companies. No. ... Company leading.

The commander of the named company will give *No.... Company. Form Fours—Right (or Left). Left (or Right)—Wheel. Quick—March.*

Each succeeding company commander will act similarly in time to gain his place in column of fours.

3. *A column advancing (or retiring) in column of fours.*

Advance (or Retire) in fours from the Right (or Left) of Companies. No.... Company leading.

The commander of the named company will give *No. ... Company, Form Fours—Right (or Left). Left (or Right)—Wheel. Quick—March.* Each succeeding company commander will act similarly in time to gain his place in column of fours.

4. *A close column or column moving to the flank in column of fours.*

In succession move to the Right (or Left) in fours. No. ... Company leading.

The commander of the named Company will give *No.... Company, Form Fours—Right (or Left). Quick—March.* Each succeeding company commander will act similarly in time to gain his place in column of fours.

5. *A close column or column when halted forming line facing in the same direction.*

i. **On the Left (or Right). Form Line. Remainder, Form Fours—Left, Quick—March.**

The movement will be carried out as in Company Drill Sec. 105, 4. Companies acting as laid down for platoons.

ii. **Line Outwards. One (or Two) Company(ies) to the Right. Remainder, Form Fours—Outwards. Quick—March.**

The movement will be carried out as in Company Drill, Sec. 105, 4, ii, companies acting as laid down for platoons.

6. *A close column on the march forming line facing a flank.*

The movement will be carried out as in Company Drill, Sec. 105, 5. Companies acting as laid down for platoons.

7. *Advancing in column from close column.*

Advance in—Column.

The movement will be carried out as in Company Drill, Sec. 105, 6. Companies acting as laid down for platoons.

8. *A column on the march closing to close column at the halt.*

At the Halt, Form Close—Column.

The movement will be carried out as in Company Drill, Sec. 105, 7. Companies acting as laid down for platoons.

9. *A close column when halted forming column at the halt.*

i. Form Column from No. 4. Remainder, Quick—March.

The rear company will stand fast, the remainder will step off and on reaching column distance will be halted and ordered to dress by the right by their commanders.

ii. Form Column from No. 1 Company. Companies in Rear, About—Turn.

Companies in rear will turn about.

Quick—March.

The leading company will stand fast. The remainder will step off and on reaching column distance will be halted and turned about by their commanders.

10. If it is required to form column on a centre company, the named company will stand fast, companies in rear will act as described and companies in front will step off on the command QUICK—MARCH and will be halted by their commanders on reaching column distance.

11. *A column when halted closing to close column at the halt.*

Form Close Column on No. ... Company. Remainder, Quick—March.

The movement will be carried out as in Company Drill, Sec. 105, 8. Companies acting as laid down for platoons.

12. *A column on the march changing direction.*

Change Direction—Right.

The movement will be carried out as in Company Drill, Sec. 106, 1. Companies acting as laid down for platoons.

13. *A column when halted forming line facing a flank.*

By the Left. Into Line. Companies, Left—Form. Quick—March.

The movement will be carried out as in Company Drill Sec. 106, 4. Companies acting as laid down for platoons.

116. Line movements

1. *A line when halted forming column (or close column) facing in the same direction.*

On the Right. Form Column (or Close Column). Remainder, Form Fours—Right. Quick—March.

The movement will be carried out as in Company Drill, Sec. 107, 1, i. Companies acting as laid down for platoons.

2. *A line when halted advancing in column.*

Advance in Column of Companies from the Right (or Left). Remainder, Form Fours—Right (or Left). Quick—March.

The movement will be carried out as in Company Drill, Sec. 107, 2. Companies acting as laid down for platoons.

3. *A line when halted forming column facing a flank at the halt.*

At the Halt. Into Column. Companies, Right—Form. Quick—March.

The men will act as in squad drill, the right guide of each company acting as the pivot man of a squad.

4. *A line when halted forming a line of companies in fours facing in the same direction.*

Advance in Fours from the Right of Companies. Form Fours—Right. Companies, Left—Wheel. Quick—March. No. ... will direct.

The movement will be made as directed, company commanders placing themselves two paces in front of the leading four of their respective companies.

5. *A line when halted changing front.*

Change Position—Right (or Left).

The right (or left) company will be formed to the right (or left) by its commander.

Remainder, Form Fours—Right (or Left), Quick—March.

The remaining companies will be led by their guides by the shortest route to the spot where their inner flank will rest and will receive the order from their commanders *At the Halt. On the Left (or Right). Form—Company.*

6. If it is required to change front half or quarter right (or left) the movement will be carried out as above, the right (or left) company being formed half or quarter right (or left) on the command **CHANGE POSITION HALF (or QUARTER)—RIGHT (or LEFT).**

117. Movements from column of fours

1. The following movements from column of fours will be carried out as in Company Drill, Sec. 108. Companies acting as laid down for platoons.

i. *A column of fours forming forward into column.*

The Battalion will form Column on the Left. Form—Companies.

ii. *A column of fours forming forward into close column at the halt.*

At the Halt, on the Left, Form Close—Column.

iii. *A column of fours forming column or close column at the halt, facing a flank.*

At the Halt, Facing Left, Form—Column (or Close Column).

iv. *A column of fours forming column facing a flank and moving forward.*

Facing Left, Advance in—Column.

v. *A close column moving to a flank in fours forming line.*

At the Halt, Facing Left (or Right), Form—Line.

2. If it is desired to form forward into column, each company forming on the same point, the command will be **IN SUCCESSION ON THE LEFT, FORM—COMPANIES.** The commander of the leading company will give the command **No. ... Company—On the Left, Form—Company. Forward.**

The remaining companies will form on the left and move forward by order of company commanders on reaching the point on which the leading company has formed.

118. *Movements to and from echelon*

1. *Echelon from line.*

Advance in Echelon at ... Paces distance from the Right (or Left), From No. (or Nos.) Company(ies).

The right, or left, or named company or companies of the line will advance by order of its commander and the remainder will be advanced successively at the required distance from one another, and will march by the inner flanks.

When an advance in echelon is made from two companies the senior company commander of the two companies will give all necessary words of command.

2. *Echelon from column or close column.*

i. *To a flank.*

Echelon to the Right (or Left), Remainder, Form Fours—Right (or Left). Double—March.

The leading company will stand fast, the remainder will

move direct to a flank, each company being halted and turned to the front by its commander when it is clear of the company in front of it.

ii. *Outwards.*

Echelon Outwards, Remainder, Form Fours—Outwards. Double—March.

The leading company will stand fast. Even numbered companies will move to the left, odd numbered companies will move to the right.

3. *Line from echelon.*

Line No. ...

The named company will continue to advance in quick time, the remainder gaining their places at the double.

If the order **AT THE HALT** is given the named company will be halted by its commander and the remainder will form line on it in quick time.

4. *Column or close column from echelon.*

Column (or Close Column) on the

The named company will continue to advance in quick time. The remainder will be marched in rear or in front of it to their places in column or close column at the double.

If the order **AT THE HALT** is given the named company will be halted by its commander and the remainder will act as above in quick time.

119. *Formations applicable to movements in the field*

1. The battalion should also be practised in moving in a suitable formation when in close proximity to the enemy. **No stereotyped formation can be laid down for these occasions.** Much will depend on the nature of the ground and the enemy's position and strength. But the battalion should be accustomed to moving in a formation of readiness which can rapidly be modified in case of emergency. It should be remembered that it is much easier to modify a formation which everyone knows and has practised than to invent one on the spur of the moment when in contact with the enemy.

2. It may be taken as a general guide that the frontage of a battalion at war establishment may range from 800 yards or even less in the case of a deliberate attack to 1,000 yards in an encounter attack, but this latter figure may be increased to 1,500 yards if the conditions demand the sacrifice of a certain amount of depth in order to increase frontage.

In defence in mobile warfare a battalion suitably organized in depth and finding its own reserve can be distributed over an area of about 1,000 yards square.

3. Plate I, Vol. II, 1926, shows six formations suitable for a battalion in the attack. **They are only given as a guide,** and must be modified to suit varying circumstances (*see* Sec. 13, 11, Vol. II, 1926). These formations must be practised so that all ranks may be familiar with them.

120. *Drill movements applicable to warfare against an uncivilized enemy*

1. In this type of warfare it is necessary to be able to present a fire front in close order in any required direction, that is to say in square formation, both rapidly and steadily.

2. When a battalion is moving in country where the tactical situation is likely to necessitate forming square, administrative details of the headquarters wing will always march in a position protected by one or more companies.

3. Square may be formed from column, line or column of route as detailed below.

Movements *into* square will always be carried out in *double* time.

4. As soon as the square has been formed the command *Fix—Bayonets* will be given.

5. Machine guns will be posted in such positions as the battalion commander may direct in view of the tactical situation.

6. Officers and supernumeraries together with any personnel of the headquarter wing, not in the ranks of companies, will be posted inside the square.

7. Before reforming line or column, the command *Unfix—Bayonets* must be given.

Movements *from* square will always be carried out in *quick* time.

8. *Forming square from column on the march.*

Form—Square.

The leading company will be halted by order of its commander. The second company will be formed to the left and the third company will be formed to the right on arrival at company distance from the leading company, by order of their commanders. The rear company will be halted and

turned about by its commander to close the rear face of the square.

9. *A square reforming column.*

**Reform Column, Side Faces, Form Fours—Inwards.
Quick—March.**

The leading company will step off. The second company will step off and wheel to the right and will be turned to the left by order of its commander on reaching its place in the column. The third company will step off and wheel to the left by order of its commander when the second company is turned to the left, and will be turned to the right on reaching its place in column. The rear company will be turned about and will step off by order of its commander when the third company is column distance from it.

10. *Forming square from a column moving to a flank in fours.*

Form—Square.

The two centre companies will be halted and turned to the right and left respectively by order of their commanders. The right company will be wheeled to the left by order of its commander and halted and turned to the right when in position to form the front face of the square. The left company will be turned about and wheeled to the left by order of its commander and halted and turned to the right when in position to form the rear face of the square.

11. *A square reforming column moving to a flank in fours.*

Reform Column, Form Fours—Outwards.

The whole will form fours. The right company, the left centre company and left company will turn to the right.

The right centre company will turn to the left. The right and left companies will step off by order of their commanders. The right company will be wheeled to the right when at column distance from the right centre company and will be halted and turned about on reaching its position in column. The left company will be wheeled to the right when at column distance from the left centre company and halted when its leading section of fours is in line with the left centre company.

12. *Forming square from a line on the march*

Form—Square.

The right centre company will be halted by its company commander. The right company and the left centre company will be turned about, formed right and left respectively and turned about again by their company commanders. The left company will form fours right by order of its company commander and will be led by the shortest route to form the rear face of the square and will be halted and turned to its right.

13. *A square reforming line.*

Reform—Line.

The right centre company will stand fast. The right company will be formed to the left and the left centre company will be formed to the right by their company commanders. The left company will form fours right by order of its company commander and will be led by the shortest route to its position in line where it will be halted and turned to its right.

14. *Forming square from column of route.*

Form—Square.

The leading company forms line on the left, the second company halts and forms the right face of the square, the third company the left face and the rear company wheeling to the left to close the rear face of the square.

15. *A square marching.*

The Square will advance (Retire, or Move to the Right (or Left)). Side Faces, Form Fours—Inwards.

The companies which will form the side faces will form fours in the required direction. The face which will be in rear will be turned about by order of its commander.

Quick—March.

Square—Halt.

Companies will halt, side faces turning outwards and the rear face turning about, without word of command.

CHAPTER VII

FIELD SIGNALS

121. *General remarks*

1. Control of troops in the field, particularly when extended or deployed, can be exercised far better, because far quicker, by signals, than by verbal or written messages. When troops are actually to be committed to a definite form of action against the enemy, full instructions should be given by the commander whenever possible. But during the approach march and at all times when quickness of movement is the first and main essential, control by signals should be used, provided the conditions are suitable.

2. When controlling troops by signal a "short blast" of the whistle (*i.e.*, "the cautionary blast," *see* Sec. 124, 1) will first be blown, before making the signal, in order to attract the attention of the troops. When he is satisfied that it is understood, the commander will drop his hand to his side, on which the units under him will act as ordered. Signals should be made with whichever arm will show most clearly what is meant.

122. *Signals*

1. The following "control signals" are used :—

Extend.—The arm extended to full extent over the head and waved slowly from side to side, the hand to be open and to come down as low as the hips on both sides of the body.

If it is required to extend to a flank the section commander will point to the required flank after finishing the signal.

2. **Deploy.**—Arm moved rapidly several times horizontally across the body, in line with the shoulder.

3. **Deploy to the Right (or Left).**—Arm moved as above and ending up with the arm pointing to the required flank.

4. **Deploy from the Centre.**—Arm moved as above and ending up with the arm being raised vertically and lowered three times to the front as if cutting.

5. **Advance.**—The arm swung from rear to front below the shoulder.

6. **Halt.**—The arm raised at full extent above the head.

7. **Retire.**—The arm circled above the head.

8. **Change direction Right (or Left).**—The arm is first extended in line with the shoulder. A circular movement is then made, on completion of which the arm and body should point in the required direction.

i. When troops are halted the above signal means *change position, right (or left)*.

ii. When troops are in column of fours, or in file or in single file, the above signal means *right (or left) wheel*.

9. **Right (or Left) incline or Turn.**—The body or horse turned in the required direction and arm extended in line with the shoulder, and pointing in the required direction.

10. **Close.**—The hand placed on top of the head, elbow to be square to the right or left according to which hand is used.

i. The above signal denotes *Close* (on the centre). If it is required to close on a flank, the leader will point to the required flank before dropping his hand.

ii. If, when on the march, it is required to halt as well as close, the leader will perform the halt signal before dropping his hand.

11. **Quick time.**—The hand raised in line with the shoulder, the elbow bent and close to the side.

12. **Double.**—The clenched hand moved up and down between the thigh and shoulder.

13. **Follow me.**—The arm swung from rear to front above the shoulder.

14. **Lie down.**—Two or three slight movements of the open hand towards the ground.

15. **As you were.**—Arm extended downwards, waved across the body, parallel to the ground.

123. *Signals with the rifle*

The following communicating “signals” are made with the rifle or flags:—

1. **Enemy in sight in small numbers.**—Rifle held above the head, at full extent of the arm and parallel with the ground, muzzle pointing to the front.

2. **Enemy in sight in large numbers.**—As for “Enemy in sight in small numbers,” but the rifle raised and lowered frequently.

3. **No enemy in sight.**—Rifle held up at full extent of arm, point or muzzle uppermost.

These signals are valuable in the case of scouts, &c., sent on ahead from their sections. Care should be taken that signal cannot be seen by the enemy.

124. *Control by whistle blasts and bugle calls*

The following whistle blasts are used :—

1. **The cautionary blast (a short blast).**—To draw attention to a signal or order about to be given.

2. **The rally blast (a succession of short blasts).**—To denote close on the leader in wood, bush, fog or darkness, when the signal cannot be seen.

On the above blast being given, the men will double towards the sound of the whistle, and will rally on the leader, facing in the same direction.

3. **The alarm blast (a succession of alternate long and short blasts).**—To turn out troops from camp or bivouac to fall in or to occupy previously arranged positions.

4. The only bugle call used in war is the “Alarm.”

With a view to peace operations, all ranks should be made acquainted with the “Stand fast,” the “Go on,” “Officers’ call,” and the “Dismiss.”

CHAPTER VIII

BATTLE DRILL

125. *General considerations*

1. This chapter deals with formations and a system of deployment to be used when units are within range of the enemy's fire, but not yet committed to action, as in the case of the approach march.

2. Quickness in deployment is of vital importance, and to secure it it is essential that units should be trained on a definite and uniform system for shaking out into loose formations.

3. Movements which have to be preceded by instructions or messages are necessarily slow in being carried out. When troops are actually to be committed to a definite role or objective in action, it is necessary to give them instructions, but prior to this it is far better if movement can be carried out instantaneously by signal. It is of the greatest advantage also for commanders to retain the maximum control over their units as long as possible.

4. By the drill laid down in this chapter, the battalion and company commanders can retain complete and **instant** control of their commands even though the latter are opened out in loose and dispersed formations to avoid loss from the enemy's effective artillery or distant small-arm fire and from

his aircraft. This greatly increases their power of manœuvre whilst within such a zone.

5. Battle drill must be practised constantly during training so that all ranks may become thoroughly flexible in their movements.

It is easier to carry out movements which are thoroughly ingrained in the minds of the troops than to improvise them on the spur of the moment.

6. Even during the actual attack, quicker control may often be exercised by means of these signals than by sending messages by orderly. There will be numerous occasions when the "change direction," complete or partial, and "incline" signals in particular may be used.

Thus directed, although deployed, units may be moved instantly towards a weak portion of the enemy's defence, to a covered approach, to meet a sudden counter-attack, or to manœuvre against an enemy's post on the flank.

The increased mobility of infantry in battle by the use of this drill will depend, however, upon constant practice during training.

126. *Control*

1. Control is by means of the ordinary field signals detailed in Chapter VII, with especial use of the "deploy" and "close" signals.

2. In the case of a battalion moving in column of route, on a "deploy" signal from the battalion commander, it would instantly shake out into four company columns distributed in depth in a "square" or "diamond" formation (see Sec. 127, 3, and Plate XXIV).

3. Once the battalion has opened out, company commanders become responsible for the formation of their companies. With a battalion moving, for example, in diamond formation, the same formation may not be suitable for the different companies and the responsibility for choice rests with the company commander.

4. Similarly, so soon as the company commander has opened out his company from close column of platoons or column of route, the responsibility for the formation of each platoon is with the platoon commander, and within the platoon that of each section with the section commander.

5. On the "close" signal from the battalion, company or platoon commander, the companies, platoons and sections will resume the formation necessary to enable them to take up the original formation in which they were before receiving the "deploy" signal.

6. By the use of a system of field signals it is thus possible during an approach march for infantry units to be opened out to avoid loss from artillery or distant small-arm fire or from aircraft while they at the same time remain under the control of their superior commander until actually committed to the attack, without the delay entailed by sending written, verbal or visual messages.

127. Normal method of deploying

1. The normal deploying intervals and distances will be 400 yards between companies, 200 yards between platoons, and 100 yards between sections.

2. Thus a battalion when deployed, with two companies leading and with platoons in square formation, will occupy a frontage of 800 yards.

3. In the case of a battalion :—

- i. If the signal were “deploy,” the leading company would move forward and out to the right until it was 400 yards ahead of the third, while the second company moved forward and out to the left until it was on roughly the same alignment, and at 400 yards interval from the first company. Meanwhile, the third and fourth companies would move straight out at right angles to right and left respectively until they were at 400 yards interval from each other. The battalion would then be in “square” formation (*see* Plate XXIV, Fig. 1).
- ii. If the signal were “deploy to the left,” the leading company would go forward 400 yards, the second and fourth companies would both go out 400 yards to the left and would get roughly into alignment with the first and third respectively, so that the battalion would then be in “square” formation (*see* Plate XXIV, Fig. 2).
- iii. Similarly the deployment could be made to increase frontage to the right by giving the signal “deploy to the right” ; in which case the first and third companies would both go out 400 yards to the right and would get roughly into alignment with the second and fourth respectively, the second company having moved forward and the

fourth company closing up to 400 yards (*see* Plate XXIV, Fig. 3).

- iv. If the signal were "deploy from the centre" the leading company would go straight forward, the second company 200 yards forward and 200 yards out to the left by inclining, the third company moving out similarly to the right and the fourth company closing up 400 yards, so that the battalion would then be in "diamond" formation (*see* Plate XXIV, Fig. 4).

4. These deployments can be done either in double or quick time. They will be carried out at the double unless the cautionary signal "quick time" is given prior to the "deploy" signal.

If, when on the march, it is required to halt on completion of the deployment the commander will give the "halt" signal after the deploy signal and before dropping his hand.

128. *Changing direction to a flank*

1. *Signal*.—The "change—direction" signal is given.

2. *Action taken*.—Each column immediately wheels in the required direction, movement being made as in Sec. 127, 4 (*see* Plate XXV, Fig. 1).

129. *Partially changing direction*

1. *Signal*.—A half "change direction" signal is given.

2. *Action taken*.—The leading column on the flank indicated makes a half wheel and then moves on in quick time, whilst

the remaining columns in line with it conform to its movement at the double until in the new alignment. The columns in rear, on reaching the same point, act similarly (see Plate XXV, Fig. 2).

130. *Inclining to a flank*

1. *Signal*.—The “incline” signal is given.
2. *Action taken*.—Each column makes a half wheel to the flank indicated, and then moves on.

131. *General remarks*

1. These formations can be altered or adapted by order or message in the usual way.

2. Units when closing into a column assume the same relative positions as they were in before deploying, *i.e.*, if ordered to close when retiring, the second and fourth parts come into position in the column in front of the first and third respectively.

3. In teaching this drill it is recommended that it first be carried out in skeleton fashion with the officers and section commanders, using the word of command instead of signal. Then again using signal, and finally with the unit as a whole.

CHAPTER IX

MARCH DISCIPLINE

132. *General instructions*

1. Column of route is the ordinary marching formation of infantry. The foundation of good march discipline is keeping step and this, together with exact covering, dressing and the maintenance of the prescribed distance from the man in front, must be insisted upon even when marching at ease. Discipline, comfort and reduction of fatigue depend entirely upon the strictest attention to these points. Thus only will march discipline develop into a habit.

2. Units moving in fours will march well into the side of the road in order not to impede traffic, the side of the road depending upon the custom of the country they are in. The directing flank will be in accordance with the rule of the road and, during halts, men will fall out on the same side of the road as they are marching.

3. In tropical climates or under dusty conditions, or in order to render a column less conspicuous from the air, it may be opened out on each side of the road; the centre of the road being kept clear for traffic.

An increase of intervals and distances between men may also be advisable, in which case orders will be issued.

133. *The battalion on the march*

1. Before commencing a march platoon commanders will inspect the men's feet and socks as well as the fit of their boots. Equipment will also be fitted to prevent discomfort and chafes. Water-bottles will be examined and cleaned. Platoon commanders will arrange for short lectures to their men on the importance of march discipline, the orders to be observed during the march, how smoking affects endurance and how thirst is aggravated rather than reduced by frequent recourse to the water-bottle. Every endeavour must be made to develop self-discipline in the men. The success of this training will depend on the efforts and preparations made by platoon commanders as well as on the example they set themselves. March discipline is the ceremonial of war. A battalion which is slack in march discipline is generally slack in battle. Want of march discipline has been the cause of battalions being unable through fatigue to take part in a battle after a march. The strictest march discipline will be enforced at all times, especially marching to and from the range, when working parties are marching to and from work, &c.

2. The following rules will be observed by infantry on the march :—

- i. Fours will be kept dressed, closed up and covered off.
No officer, warrant officer or N.C.O. will march outside the column.
- ii. In order to avoid loss of road space in the case of a battalion at reduced strength, the sections of a platoon may be numbered off and proved together for the purpose of forming fours.

- iii. An officer, warrant officer or N.C.O. will march in rear and another at the head of each platoon.
- iv. Halts will be made for ten minutes at ten minutes to every clock hour, irrespective of the hour of the start or the nearness of the end of the march.
- v. Every man in a four will change places after each ten minutes' halt. The men originally on the inner flank falling in on the outer flank and the remainder of the four moving to their left or right.
- vi. A battalion will start and halt by companies by whistle or signal, or by both. The battalion as a whole will be warned by whistle one minute before each halt and start.
- vii. Troops will march at *attention* when the warning signal to halt is given. Troops will fall in and *stand-at-ease* when the warning signal to start is given. On the command *Quick—March* they will come to *attention*, slope and march off. They will then march at ease without any further orders.
- viii. During halts cross roads and road junctions will be left clear for traffic.
- ix. Every man will take his equipment off during each clock-hour halt and put it on again at one minute before starting. Men will be practised in taking off and putting on equipment quickly. Under suitable conditions they should be made to lie down during halts, and, if possible, raise their feet so as to relieve them of pressure and allow the blood to circulate.

- x. Mounted officers will spend most of their time looking after the rear, not the front, of their units and will regulate the pace to avoid distress behind.
- xi. Men should never be allowed to double. If distance is lost it will be picked up gradually. If this fails word will be sent to the head of the column to march slower. Mounted company commanders can see to this.
- xii. Organized singing on the march will be encouraged in every battalion. It helps men to march well even when fatigued.
- xiii. The more tired the men are at the end of a march, the more strictly must march discipline be enforced.
- xiv. Men unable to keep up till the next halt should be instructed to fall out and follow in rear of the column. Written permission to fall out will be given them by an officer. Section commanders will remain with their sections and not fall out to take care of sick men.
- xv. Men's feet will be inspected by platoon commanders immediately after every march.

134. *Horsed and pack transport*

- 1. Transport will be kept closed up on the march.
- 2. No man will be allowed to ride on transport vehicles except in the case of those driven from the box or on those requiring a brakesman on the box. This man will dismount when going up a steep hill or over rough ground.

In all other cases the brakesman will march with his rifle slung and, except when operating the brake, will march clear of the vehicle.

In order to prevent gaps, any dismounted men accompanying transport will march in rear of and close up to the vehicles. Strict march discipline must be insisted on at all times.

In special cases men may, when in possession of a written order from an officer, ride or place their arms and equipment in *empty* wagons.

3. At one minute before a halt transport will edge into the rule of the roadside so that vehicles may close in to the side of the road when the order to halt is given.

4. During halts led horses and pack animals will be backed in at right angles to the road with their heads facing the centre of the roadway.

5. During any long halts horses will be off-saddled or packs off-loaded and their backs hand-rubbed. During short halts mounted men will dismount, girths will be loosened and saddle or pack loads eased or adjusted without orders. Whenever time permits, if only for a few minutes, pack loads will be removed and in the case of transport poles dropped.

Horses and pack animals will be ready to march again within one minute of the order to fall in.*

135. *Compliments on the march*

1.—i. Bodies of troops will be ordered to march at *attention* by the commander of a unit or detachment when passing

(a) The King, The Queen, and other Members of the Royal Family. (But see also Sec. 191, 5.)

- (b) Armed bodies of troops on the march, commanded by an officer.
- (c) Guards escorts, &c.
- (d) Their own brigade commander and general officers and officers of the Royal Navy and Royal Air Force of equivalent ranks, when in uniform.

Compliments will be paid by platoons or companies if the companies are too weak to parade in platoons. In such cases the commanders of these bodies will give the command *Eyes—right (or left)*. All officers will salute and also other ranks if in command of platoons.

Small bodies of troops not commanded by officers will pay compliments to all officers.

ii. Unarmed bodies of troops passing each other will be called to attention and compliments will be paid as in para. 1, i. above.

iii. The officer in command of an armed party will return the salute of a N.C.O. in charge of an unarmed party of less than 20 men (*see* para. 1020 King's Regulations, 1923), but will not call the armed party to *attention*.

2. When in command of a party, armed or unarmed, an officer will salute any officer in uniform he passes of a rank senior to himself ; also officers of senior rank of other Services.

3. Compliments paid by guards and sentries will be returned as in para. 1 above.

4. A battalion on the march or on collective training will only pay compliments to higher commanders and to its own brigade commander once a day. At other times the commander of the battalion only will salute his seniors.

On other occasions, when the frequent paying of compliments is likely to cause fatigue to the troops, brigade commanders, &c., will use their discretion and issue orders on the subject beforehand.

5. When persons entitled to salutes approach from the rear, compliments will not be paid, but officers will salute.

This will not apply in the case of those members of the Royal Family to whom compliments are paid ; in this case troops will be ordered to march at *attention*.

6. Troops will march at *attention* until clear of as well as when approaching their parade ground.

7. Whistle signals should be arranged by battalion commanders for *attention* and *march-at-ease*.

136. *Sanitation on the march*

1. Remains of food, paper bags, &c., will be buried or burnt, care being taken that standing crops or undergrowth are not set on fire. Tins will be collected and buried, if possible.

2. During long halts for midday meals, &c., and when necessary during other halts, arrangements will be made for digging latrines. They should be dug, if possible, before the arrival of the troops, and will be filled in when the march is resumed.

3. When camps are used or ground is hired for long halts, an officer will be detailed to superintend the sanitary and police arrangements, and special orders will be issued to the troops regarding drinking and washing water, cooking, latrines, disposal of manure, &c.

137. *Distances on the march*

The normal distance to be maintained between battalions on the march will be 20 yards, and between companies and similar groups will be 10 yards. Distances will be reckoned from the last item of a preceding battalion or company to the head of the leading mounted officer's horse of the next. In the case of groups who have no mounted officer, the leading officer, N.C.O. or section of fours will be considered to be the head. It will often happen, however, that companies or platoons will have to march independently with long distances between them, *e.g.*, on roads where large numbers might attract the enemy's attention, or where traffic is heavy.

138. *Positions of officers, &c.*

The positions of officers, &c., laid down for normal column of route do not apply to movements on or near the battlefield, where the battalion commander is responsible that his battalion is arranged to suit the tactical requirements.

For instance, it will often be necessary for all the company commanders to march at the head of the battalion and platoon commanders at the head of their companies where they will be in convenient positions to receive instructions, to reconnoitre ground or to select methods for passing their commands over obstacles on the line of march.

CHAPTER X

TRAINING IN FIELD OPERATIONS

(See also Vol. II and Training and Manœuvre Regulations)

139. General instructions

1. The previous chapters of this manual have dealt with the training of infantry in close order and battle drill, the development of a soldierly spirit, and the inculcation of discipline. The following sections deal with training in the field.

2. Such training will be divided into two categories :—

- i. The training of the leader.
- ii. The training of the man.

3. In all stages of training advantage must be taken of local conditions to teach those lessons for which the ground available is best suited.

Sand models should be used for indoor instruction.

140. The training of the leader

1. It should be arranged that the training of the leaders is completed before the period fixed for the annual field training of the men.

2. Before commencing the training of the men the leaders, from section commanders upwards, will be practised in their

duties and in dealing with the various situations with which their units are likely to be confronted in war. This training should consist of exercises without troops. It is far better for a leader to make his mistakes without his men than for his men to be manœuvred on unsound lines while the commander is gaining his experience.

3. The company commander will devote special attention to the training of platoon and section commanders in grasping situations rapidly, in issuing clear orders quickly to their men, and in adopting suitable formations for the task in hand. Special attention will also be paid to keeping direction and to the orderly continuance of operations after units have become mixed and commanders incapacitated.

In addition to its duties in attack and defence, a company will receive careful instruction in the duties of an out-post company (Chap. IV, Vol. II, 1926) of principles of wood and village fighting (Chap. V, Vol. II, 1926), with practical illustrations where these can be arranged. The duties and dispositions of a company in position warfare should also be practised as well as the system of taking over a line, and reliefs, &c.

4. The successful handling of the platoon in war will depend largely on the initiative and powers of leadership displayed by the section commanders. Their intelligence and appreciation of tactical principles must therefore be so trained and developed that once the role of their sections has been explained to them they can carry it out without further orders from the platoon commander.

5. Section commanders will be exercised in :—

- i. Simple formations for advancing, fire direction and control.

- ii. The principle of combining fire with movement and the use of cover and smoke.
- iii. The role of the section in attack, defence and protection.
- iv. Protective measures against gas.
- v. Making quick decisions.
- vi. Map reading and the use of the compass.
- vii. Writing simple reports and messages.
- viii. The use of signals, including semaphore.
- ix. The siting and construction of trenches and obstacles.
- x. The conduct of patrols.

6. The training of company and platoon commanders will, in addition to the above, include :—

- i. Study of ground.
- ii. Reconnaissance.
- iii. The issue of orders and messages, both verbal and written.
- iv. Dispositions for attack, defence and protection.

141. The training of the man

1. The collective training of the men will be carried out in their sections and platoons under their own commanders.

2. When the company commander considers that his platoons are fit to take their places in the company, the latter will be exercised as a whole, as will be the battalion at a later stage.

142. Tactical exercises

1. In the training of the complete unit, tactical exercises, when carried out as a drill, do not require careful preliminary

reconnaissance and study of ground, if intended merely to teach the men formations for attack and defence, distances between units, pace of the advance, use of covering fire, &c. When, however, the training of the platoon, company or battalion has reached such a stage that it is no longer necessary to carry out tactical exercises as a drill, all commanders, during the early part of the training, must be taken over the ground before the exercise is carried out with the men, and be instructed in the correct action to take throughout the operation.

Schemes for tactical exercises on the ground should be issued to subordinates in advance so that the latter's solutions can be criticized and the correct action explained to them before the men are employed. In this way the leaders will receive valuable instruction and the constant checks and delays due to the mistakes of commanders are obviated.

2. For training to be successful all ranks must know and understand the object of each exercise and its tactical lesson or lessons. Too much must not be attempted in one day.

3. In section and platoon training the men will be exercised in the methods of attack and defence described in Chaps. II & III, Vol. II, 1926, over as great a variety of ground as possible, and in the rudiments of protection, Chap. IV, Vol. II, 1926. During this training special attention will be devoted to developing the tactical knowledge of the men to enable them to apply the lessons learnt during individual training to the various situations of the battle-field.

4. The section is the largest unit which can be personally controlled by its leader throughout the battle; after the first stages of training have been completed, over-centralization of control by company and platoon commanders must be

avoided ; it is not possible in war and will invariably break down in battle. Successful instruction depends on every man in every section understanding clearly, before the exercise commences, what is the role and objective of his platoon and section and how it is to be carried out.

Time employed in explanation is time well spent.

5. A high standard of discipline must be maintained during training. Each day's work should include a short period of close order drill ; it is an advantage if the day's work is occasionally brought to a close with a march past or some similar exercise.

143. Instructions for the preparation and execution of schemes

March discipline should be practised on the way to and from training.

1. Written orders or instructions should be prepared by the company commanders and criticized by the battalion commander before they are issued. Having explained the scheme to their section commanders, platoon commanders will then issue their own verbal orders. The section commanders in their turn will explain to their men the roles of their respective sections including what the units on the flanks, in front and in rear, are going to do.

By this system all leaders are in a position to instruct their men and fully explain the various stages of the action to them. Thus interest is stimulated and maintained.

2. In the early stages of training, before subordinate commanders are efficient in dealing with situations as they arise, battalion exercises may be rehearsed.

3. In the case of practice attacks the defence must always be represented, either by a flagged or skeleton enemy, and must adopt the proper dispositions of a force consolidated in depth. Arrangements must also be made to simulate battle conditions and, by the help of umpires, use of blank ammunition and other methods, attackers must be kept informed when they are coming, or have come, under fire.

4. When using a skeleton enemy, it is essential that its movements and dispositions should be carefully controlled by the director in order that the situations required to illustrate the lessons which the exercise has been framed to teach may be brought out. This will usually entail taking the commander of the skeleton force over the ground beforehand and explaining to him in broad lines how he is to carry out his task. The skeleton force must remember that it is not there for its own instruction, nor for free manœuvre, but only for the purpose of bringing about the situation or situations desired by the director.

5. It must be firmly impressed on all ranks during training that in the attack the main object of infantry is to get forward as quickly as possible and close with the enemy, and that all unnecessary hesitation and delay are to be deprecated; at the same time all must be made to understand thoroughly that the only way to get forward in the face of effective fire is to overcome that fire and so make movement possible.

The tendency of the majority of peace attacks is to go too fast in the face of effective fire, ignoring it and in other ways minimizing or disregarding the many difficulties which confront the attacker in battle and which have to be overcome.

Endeavour should be made to simulate every detail of the

training to the conditions of the modern battle-field, and so to train section and other leading unit commanders that when they find themselves opposed by effective fire they will :—

- i. Endeavour to overcome it with their own fire,
or
- ii. Pin the opposition down and so assist other units to push on and overcome or envelop it,
or
- iii. When definitely held up report :—
 - (a) The position and strength of the enemy.
 - (b) The position of their own unit.
 - (c) The best place for the commander to observe from.
 - (d) The most favourable line of advance for any reserves which may be sent up to co-operate.

6. The carrying out of the above will usually entail sending messages back to company and battalion headquarters (in company training the position of the latter should always be indicated and sometimes represented) and the subsequent necessary reconnaissances and the movement of reserves in co-operation. All this will take time, and though the delays caused thereby may at times appear irksome and unnecessary, it must be realized that these delays do occur in battle and that it is impossible to obtain co-operation of other units and arms without them.

If unit commanders explain to the troops why they cannot get on and what steps are being taken to overcome the opposition, there should be no difficulty in interesting the men and making them understand the reason for the delay.

7. Mounted umpires should accompany the attackers to describe clearly to the troops (as far as they would be aware of it in battle) what the situation is on their front and what description of fire they are under.

By the use of umpire screens they will indicate to the troops:

- i. When the advance can only be continued by fire and movement.
- ii. When the leading troops are held up by fire.

Umpires should also put the garrisons out of action where the attacks on their posts have been carried out on a correct tactical plan.

As the success of the training depends so much on how the umpiring is carried out, the officers best qualified should be selected for this duty.

It is essential that the umpires on both sides should work in co-operation with each other, in order to guide the operations and develop the scheme on the lines required.

8. In peace operations, owing to fire effect being absent and to the necessity for making a few rounds of blank last through hours of fighting, the tendency is to pay more attention to numbers, formations and consequent vulnerability of opposing forces, than to fire direction, fire control, and fire discipline. This tendency must be guarded against, and commanders at all periods of training in the field should devote special attention to seeing that the principles of fire tactics are correctly taught and applied, so that neither bad habits may be acquired nor false lessons deduced from the more or less artificial conditions of peace operations.

9. Exercises in the field will be carried out in marching

order. In the case of Territorial Army units, commanders will exercise their discretion in this matter, gradually working up to "marching order" during annual training.

10. Blank ammunition will be used in practising the more advanced exercises.

11. Casualties should sometimes be practised, particularly when R.A.M.C. personnel can be present, and labels denoting the wound should always be used.

144. The later stages of company and battalion training

1. In the later stages of company training it is important that situations should be worked out to their logical conclusion, and that troops should be practised in delivering and receiving an assault, in methods of consolidation, in the pursuit, in assuming the offensive from the defensive, and in retirements. During this period a company should occasionally be made up to war strength in order to practise commanders in handling their units under active service conditions. At the end of the course the company should, where local conditions admit, carry out continuous training of about three days' duration, for which a special scheme should be prepared.

2. Schemes for battalion training should deal with the situations which would confront a battalion acting independently as well as when part of an infantry brigade. The battalion commander should pay special attention during this period to co-operation between the companies and with the other arms.

3. Concealment and protection from aircraft and the effect of the use of gas by the enemy, should be considered during all training.

145. Co-operation of the other arms

Whenever possible, arrangements should be made for cavalry, artillery, engineers, tanks and aircraft to co-operate with infantry during battalion training. In any case the action and effect of these arms, and the action and effect of aircraft and smoke, must be considered in the solution of tactical problems. Even if complete units of other arms are unable to attend, officers from them should be detailed to assist the battalion commander with their suggestions and advice.

If an attack is assumed to be behind a barrage the barrage must be represented by flags or drums, and must be worked under an officer to a proper time-table.

When tanks are not available and an exercise in co-operation with this arm is desired, limbers or carts may be used to represent tanks. These should be under the command of officers of the Royal Tank Corps.

146. Training in methods of advancing under fire, and in the use of ground

1. The soldier will be taught the importance of the principle of combining fire with movement (*see* Secs. 4 and 7, Vol. II, 1926), and that the wise employment of every feature of the ground is of great importance in promoting fire effect and reducing losses (*see* Sec. 8, Vol. II, 1926). Special attention will be given to the various methods of advancing under different

conditions of fire and ground, the conditions under which these methods are used and the object of manœuvre being explained, while the one object of every advance, namely, to close with the enemy, should be insisted on.

2. Platoon and section commanders will be taught that when their units are advancing in the attack they must continue to press forward until definitely held up: they should not stop to open fire unless forced to do so to establish the fire superiority necessary to maintain mobility (*see* Sec. 14, Vol. II, 1926). They must not halt because units on the flanks are held up; the best way to assist these units is by pushing on, thus threatening the flanks of those parties of the enemy who may be holding out. When, owing to the volume of fire, a continuous advance is no longer possible, progress must be made by combining fire with movement, one or more sections advancing in turn, or endeavouring to work round the enemy's flanks, covered by the fire of the remainder. Normally, the Lewis-gun sections will produce the fire to enable the rifle sections to advance. Commanders should on these occasions select the line of advance giving the best cover, and endeavour to decide beforehand on the next halting place for their unit. This should be pointed out to the men, who must get there as quickly as possible when the signal to advance is given. Rushes should, as a rule, be made by complete sections rising from and dropping into cover quickly and as nearly as possible simultaneously.

3. Smoke grenades (*see* Sec. 11, 3, Vol. II, 1926) are often of value to assist movement under fire. The advantages and disadvantages inherent in their use and the limitations

set by the small number of grenades carried in the field must be explained to unit commanders.

If smoke is to be used successfully adequate training on the subject must be afforded. A suggested form of training is given in Appendix "C" to Manual on the use of Smoke, 1923.

4. The conditions of the modern battlefield are such that decisions as to the necessity on which smoke grenades are to be employed will often fall on platoon and section commanders. They must be taught to accept responsibility in this matter and to appreciate the situations in which the employment of smoke is really vital to their advance.

Therefore, whilst training these unit commanders to accept responsibility in this matter, it must be firmly impressed on them that, for the reasons given above, smoke, as a rule, should be resorted to at close ranges and only when it appears probable that its use will overcome the immediate difficulty which confronts their platoon or section. As the number of smoke grenades carried is limited they should satisfy themselves that no other means exist which can be resorted to at the moment for this purpose.

5. The use of *ground* can best be taught by practical demonstration. The soldier should be made to understand that it is good cover which enables him to use his weapon to the best advantage while exposing himself as little as possible.

6. When equally good view can be obtained it is better to fire round the side of cover than over it, as the firer is then less visible.

7. When firing from behind cover the soldier must keep his eyes on the target between each shot, otherwise he may lose sight of it and have difficulty in locating it again.

8. Cover from view, which does not also afford cover from fire, should not provide a good aiming or ranging mark for the enemy. For example, a hedge or bush, in country where such features are of uncommon occurrence, may become a dangerous trap if men crowd behind it and the enemy discovers they are there. Moving objects catch the eye more quickly than those that are still, and when, in default of cover, men are lying in the open, all but the necessary movements to load and fire must be avoided. Men halted in the open should not show up against the skyline.

9. Cover from aircraft (*see* Secs. 40-41, Vol. II, 1926) can best be obtained by moving through woods or along hedgerows. The difficulties of observation from the air are increased if men stand still or lie down and refrain from looking up when hostile aircraft are overhead. In sunlight the shadow cast by a figure is more easily detected from the air than the figure itself, and troops can best avoid detection by keeping in the shade. When once committed to the attack no attempt will be made by the leading troops to seek cover from the enemy's aircraft, the mission of which at this time will more probably be to locate the reserves.

10. It will be explained that even a few troops marching on a wide road are clearly visible from the air. In order to conceal a movement from aircraft, troops should keep in the shadows at the side of the road, and march on grass rather than on the metalled portion.

147. *Inter-communication and the training of orderlies*

1. In order that they may be able to supplement other means of inter-communication in battle (*see* Sec. 10, 4, and 6, Vol. II, 1926), orderlies must be specially trained to :—

- i. Use covered lines of advance.

- ii. Watch the fall of the enemy's artillery fire and to take advantage of gaps in the fire and intervals between bursts of fire.
- iii. Be able to judge what ground is likely to be swept by the enemy's fire and to learn to avoid it.
- iv. Read a map.
- v. Deliver verbal messages. (*See* Sec. 10, 4, Vol. II, 1926.)

2. Accuracy in the transmission of verbal messages cannot be obtained without constant practice. The orderly must always be made to repeat a message before he is despatched. On arrival he must call out loudly the designation of the person to whom the message is directed. The message must be delivered in a loud, steady voice without hurry or excitement.

148. *Reconnaissance, scouts and patrols*

1.—*Scouts*. The employment of scouts is dealt with in Secs. 15, 5, and 16, 3, Vol. II, 1926. Their duty is primarily protective, though highly trained battalion scouts may be given special tasks to gain definite information on important points. Scouts employed in this latter way have no responsibility for keeping touch with the unit to which they belong.

Patrols are used to reconnoitre lines of advance, to give warning of the presence and movement of the enemy and to locate his machine guns.

Fighting patrols are employed to obtain information about the enemy, which will probably entail driving in his scouts and patrols; to obtain identifications, and to harass the enemy.

2. Training for employment on the above duties will be on the same lines in each case, the difference between them being mainly one of degree. The more scout-craft a man acquires, the more useful he will be on patrol. * Battalion scouts should be reserved for work of exceptional importance. Men with the qualifications which a battalion scout should possess must not be risked unnecessarily.

3. All soldiers should be trained in reconnoitring, observing and reporting the results of their observations.

4. Scouts should always work in pairs and should move by successive short bounds. When necessary, one can remain observing while the other signals or goes back with a report.

5. The value of the work done by scouts will depend largely on the orders they receive. They should always have a particular objective assigned to them, and must be given specific questions to answer. The commander who despatches scouts must arrange with them for means of rapidly communicating any intelligence gained.

6. The role of scouts is to observe and report, and when engaged on reconnaissance duties they must only use their rifles in self defence.

7. During peace operations scouts should not be allowed to employ methods which would be impossible in war.

149. *The training of scouts*

1. The training of scouts will be carried out principally during the periods of individual training.

2. The methods of training to be adopted are left to the choice of the officers concerned.

3. Men selected for training as scouts should possess good eyesight and sound physique. Those who have a natural sense of direction, are self-reliant, resourceful and ready to take risks will make the most apt pupils.

4. A scout must be trained to :—

- i. Observe by the use of both his eyes and ears.
- ii. Understand the use of ground so that he can move about and see without being seen.
- iii. Judge distances accurately.
- iv. Estimate numbers correctly.
- v. Read a map.
- vi. Find his way over any country by day and night, by memorizing ground, by the sun or stars.
- vii. Report what is of use and report it clearly and concisely.
- viii. Read semaphore signalling, field signals, and, if possible, have a working knowledge of all other methods of visual signalling.
- ix. Keep himself fit.

5. To observe, a scout must know :—

- i. *What to look for* ; such as movement, changes and contrasts, curious and unnatural objects, signs of the enemy in dust, smoke, tracks, and in the glint or clear outline of objects like a helmet or the barrel of a rifle.
- ii. *Where to look for it* ; by putting himself in the enemy's place and so deciding which are the most likely points to examine.

- iii. *How to look* ; always to act as though he were being watched. To see quickly without being seen and to expose himself, when necessary, very gradually.
- iv. *How to listen* ; to differentiate sounds, such as birds alarmed and birds undisturbed, twigs being trodden on, movement through grass, wiring or cutting wire. To maintain perfect silence, noting the wind and the ground, and placing his ear to the ground.
- v. *How to avoid being heard* ; by balancing and feeling his way, raising his feet and avoiding crackling leaves or twigs.

6. The appreciation of ground comprises the use of covered lines of advance in dead ground, woods, rocks, and shadows. A scout must avoid prominent and easily marked points of observation. If held up, he should try elsewhere—boldness may be necessary to deceive the enemy. He must move quickly so long as he is not exposed to view, avoiding unnecessary crawling and similar precautions.

7. A scout must learn to judge distances and numbers by the eye, by various methods. He can use a unit of measure which is familiar such as a 100 yards or a platoon, or he can compare with an object of known size. When there are several scouts, the average of the various estimates should be taken.

8. To find his way a scout must learn to note the direction of the wind, the lie of the ground, the time he takes to cover various distances, marking the route and the appearance of landmarks from both sides, to help his return. This should

be a different route to the way by which he went out. He must learn the use of the sun and stars, to find his way.

150. *Training in the conduct and duties of infantry patrols*

1. Infantry patrols are used to obtain information, either of the enemy or of the ground in the vicinity of the force to which they belong.

Their employment in defence and from an outpost position is dealt with in Secs. 22, 9 to 12, and 38, Vol. II. 1926.

The following principles will govern their training.

2. Successful patrol work depends principally upon the patrol leader. He must always be given :—

- i. Definite questions requiring definite answers.
- ii. His approximate route and the time he is to be away.
- iii. Information as to the probable movement of friendly troops.
- iv. The place to which reports are to be sent.
- v. The password.

3. The information obtained by a patrol is of no value until it has reached the commander who sent out the patrol. Patrol leaders must therefore be trained to appreciate the importance of sending back information and constantly to consider how this can best be done.

They should be taught that negative information, which is information as to the absence of the enemy from certain places at certain times, is most valuable and should be sent in from time to time.

4. In order that information may be sent in, a patrol should move in such a formation that, if surprised, at least one man will be able to get back.

The leader should vary the formation to suit the circumstances. By day, arrowhead or diamond formation may be best; by night, the patrol must not be so widely spread out as to run the danger of touch being lost, nor be so close up that it may easily fall into an ambush.

Lewis guns (if present) should be so placed that they can fire to the flanks and at night the patrol must be capable of putting up an all round defence.

5. The patrol leader should explain as much as may be desirable of his plan of action to his subordinates in order that each shall know how to carry on in the event of accidents.

6. He should also give instructions as to where the patrol will rendezvous in the event of it being scattered.

7. The method of advance of a patrol by day should usually be by bounds from cover to cover, some men being halted while the others move.

At night the leader will move at the head of his patrol so that his orders can be acted on promptly without noise or confusion.

8. The movements of the men composing a patrol are governed by the considerations in Sec. 149, 6.

Any places in which parties of the enemy may be concealed, such as woods, ravines, villages, &c., must be approached with caution, one or two men advancing under the cover of the rifles of the remainder.

9. When resting, a patrol should disperse, and one or more look-out men should invariably be posted.

10. Reconnoitring patrols should be trained to obtain their information without the use of their rifles if this is possible. It should, however, be made clear that if a small party of the enemy is encountered, the assumption of a resolute offensive will generally be the best course.

11. Fighting patrols are usually commanded by an officer and generally comprise one or more Lewis-gun sections.

151. *Training in field engineering and in duties in billets, camps and bivouacs*

1. Instructions will be given in the occupation and preparation of quarters (billets, camps, and bivouacs), as laid down in Chap. XIII, F.S.R., Vol. II, 1924. Men will be taught the importance of sanitation, and how to prepare food and to look after their own comfort in circumstances resembling as closely as possible those of active service (*see Manual of Field Works (all Arms)).*

2. Instructions will also be given in such field engineering as might be required to be undertaken by infantry in war.

3. The soldier should have learned during the period of individual training how to use the various forms of tools, and the elementary principles of field fortification.

During his training in field operations he should be taught to apply his knowledge to various tactical situations, *e.g.*, attack, consolidation, defence, protection, &c.

4. Officers and N.C.Os. should be instructed and practised in the organization of work, including timely preparation and efficient distribution of men, tools and materials on the work. (*See Sec. 73, Vol. II, 1926, and Chap. III, Manual of Field Works (All ranks) 1925.*)

152. *Training in marching*

1. March discipline is dealt with in Chapter IX.
2. The power of undertaking long and rapid marches without loss in numbers and energy is essential to success in war.
3. The military spirit of troops is reduced by excessive fatigue ; fatigue can be reduced only by careful training.
4. Training in marching will be begun during recruit training and must be carried out with care, especially in the case of recruits and men called up from the reserve, otherwise training will result in a reduction in physical strength.
5. Recruits should be taken out for short marches during their early training and practised in falling out and falling in quickly.
6. At the end of battalion training a battalion with its transport should be capable of undertaking a succession of long marches in marching order without loss in numbers.

153. *Training in night operations* (Chap. VI, Vol. II, 1926)

1. The chief object of this training is to accustom the soldier to moving in the dark, so that individuals and units can act with confidence by night. The instruction will be begun during early training and will be carried out progressively ; it should culminate during the latter stages of company training and during battalion training with practice in the various methods of conducting night operations. The elementary work can be practised advantageously during winter afternoons and evenings or by day by

means of smoked glasses. The more advanced exercises should be carried out late at night or in the early morning.

2. The elementary training should consist in explanations followed by practical work. The following may be taken as a general guide as to the methods to be adopted, only the more elementary being used in the period of early training :—

i. *Visual training*.—One man of a section should march away and be stopped by voice or pre-arranged signal as soon as he is out of sight. He should call out the number of paces he has taken. The same man should then advance towards the section from some distance further off and be stopped as soon as he becomes visible, later counting his paces to the section.

It should be explained that :—

- (a) Ability to see in the dark increases with practice.
- (b) Objects are more visible when the moon is behind the observer than when it is in front of him.
- (c) An observer may stand up when he has a definite back-ground and should lie down when he has not.

When the men have been practised in observing a man approaching at a walk, they should be similarly practised in observing a man who is endeavouring to approach unseen.

ii. *Training in hearing*.—Instruction will be carried out on similar lines to visual training. At first the advance of a single man should be listened for, gradually the number should be increased so that facility may be acquired in judging the strength of a party approaching.

Listening should be practised on various types of ground,

e.g., open and close country, across and in valleys, in woods, &c. The differences should be noted and explained.

iii. *Silent advances*.—At first, individual instruction should be given without arms, later the company should be taken out in marching order and should practise advancing noiselessly on roads, and in various formations over open ground, with whispered words of command.

Precautions should be taken to prevent equipment rattling and arms must not be allowed to clash, the latter must be placed noiselessly on the shoulders and on the ground in sloping and ordering arms.

iv. *Training in orientation*.—The training should be individual and conducted by means of demonstrations and questions. Men should be able to distinguish the Pole Star (or in the Southern Hemisphere the Southern Cross), and should also be instructed in the identification by night of natural objects as guides to direction.

v. *Night firing*.—The necessity for fixed rests and well-defined aiming marks should be explained.

vi. *Reconnaissance prior to advances and attacks*.—At first, the point marking the objective for the night attack should be either some conspicuous object or should be marked by a flag. Men should not be allowed to approach nearer to the position than a point from which they might hope to avoid detection in daylight. From this point they should survey the line of approach to the objective by day. After dark, men working in pairs should advance on the objective from the point from which the reconnaissance was made by day. Men should be instructed in taking notes (written or mental) during the day reconnaissance, and should prior to the night

work, be questioned on the same. As proficiency increases the same procedure should be adopted with less conspicuous objectives.

vii. *Entrenching at night.*—Men should be instructed how to carry entrenching tools without making a noise, and in the construction of various types of defences, in the dark as silently and quickly as possible. (*See* Chap. III, *Manual of Field Works* (All Arms), 1925).

viii. *Inter-communication and verbal messages.*—Messages should be passed in a whisper from front to rear, or *vice versa*, the final message received being checked by the original, in order to detect faults. Orderlies should also be trained in carrying messages at night.

PART II

CEREMONIAL

CHAPTER XI

DRILL.—COMPANY AND BATTALION

154. *General rules*

1. This and the following chapters deal with drill and formation for ceremonial parades. On these occasions the battalion will be formed into four companies and companies will be sized and equalized as a temporary measure to meet special requirements. Such variation will not, however, be resorted to on any other occasions than ceremonial and the necessary practice drills for ceremonial, and even then the organization of units will, as far as possible, be preserved in accordance with the principle laid down for the organization of a battalion.

Formation of companies.—Companies will fall in in line, will be equalized and sized from flanks to centre, numbered from right to left, and told off into platoons.

The lateral space occupied by each man will be a maximum of 24 inches, but a 2-inch space, elbow to elbow, should be aimed at.

Company commanders will not be mounted on ceremonial parades.

Dressing will be carried out by word of command (Sec. 12, 5).

Details of company headquarters and section commanders below the rank of serjeant will be in the ranks. Signallers will not carry flags. Company serjeant-majors and company quarter-master-serjeants will be on the flanks of the front rank of their companies, acting as right and left guide respectively, and will dress the company as required. Serjeants, whether commanding platoons or not, will be two paces in rear of the company at equal intervals apart. All ranks fix bayonets on ceremonial parades. Other ranks not armed with a rifle, with the exception of warrant officers and staff-serjeants who wear the sword, will, as far as possible, be issued with rifles for ceremonial purposes.

Warrant officers and staff-serjeants who wear the sword will be in the supernumerary rank.

2. In line (*see* Plate XXVI), the battalion commander will be 15 paces in front of the centre of the line. The senior major will be six paces in front of the right guide of the battalion, the adjutant six paces in front of the left guide. Company commanders will be six paces in front of the centre of their companies, officers second in command of companies three paces in front of the centre of their companies. Officers commanding platoons three paces in front of the centre of their platoons. If there are less than four officers commanding platoons in any company on parade, the officer second in command and the platoon commanders will divide the company frontage between them. The band will be drawn up ten paces in rear of the colour party.

In close column of companies (*see* Plate XXVII), which for ceremonial will be at ten paces distance, the battalion commander will be 15 paces in front of the centre of the leading

company. The senior major will be on the directing flank of the battalion three paces from a point midway between the first and second companies, the adjutant immediately in rear of him, between the third and fourth companies, except that when the battalion is on the move, it will be the adjutant's duty to place himself in a position where he can best superintend the direction of the advance and the covering of the guides on the directing flank. Company commanders will be two paces from the guide on the directing flank of their companies. Officers second in command of companies will be three paces in front of the centre of their companies, officers commanding platoons will be three paces in front of the centre of their platoons. The band and drums will be ten paces in rear of the centre of the rear company.

If there are less than four officers commanding platoons in any company on parade, the officer second in command and the officers commanding platoons will divide up the company frontage equally between them.

3. *The colour party.*—In line, the colours, each carried by an officer (as directed in King's Regulations), will be placed between the two centre companies; the King's Colour on the right, the Regimental Colour on the left, with a serjeant between them and two N.C.Os. or selected privates, covering them in line with the rear rank. The officer carrying the King's Colour will command the party.

If ranks are changed, the colour party will change flank on the order of the senior officer of the colour party, if the line is ordered to retire, the colour party will turn about, and the centre serjeant, stepping forward two paces, will align himself with the rear rank.

In marching past by companies, the colour party will be in rear of the centre of the second company, its front rank aligned with the supernumerary rank.

In close column of companies, and when marching past in that formation, the position of the colour party will be in rear of the centre of the second company, the two N.C.Os. or selected privates in the rear rank moving up respectively on the right and left of the colours, and the whole aligned with the supernumerary rank of the company.

4. *Headquarter wing*.—The personnel of the headquarter wing not in the ranks of companies, and band and drums (and bugles), will parade as ordered by the commander of the parade and will form as shown in Plates XXVI and XXVII.

5. *Marking points and markers*.—Flags or posts may be set up to mark the line on which troops are to form, or the line may be picked out, or marked by whitewash. (*See Sec. 155.*)

The platoon serjeants of the outer platoons of a company are available to act as markers. The words ON MARKERS should precede the command given when it is required to dress on markers. In such cases both markers of the company of formation and the outer markers of the remaining companies will double out in the case of deployments from close column on the command QUICK MARCH, and when forming line to a flank on the command LEFT (OR RIGHT)—FORM. Markers in giving points will turn towards the point of formation at arm's length in front of the alignment, and recover

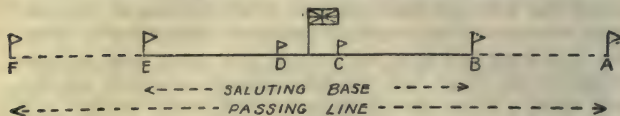
arms. They will be covered by the regimental serjeant-major who will give the command *Steady* as soon as covered, when markers will slope arms (if necessary change arms). When the men approach they will extend their inner arm at right angles to the body with the fist clenched on which the line will dress. When the dressing is completed markers will resume their positions (changing arms if necessary) at the double on the command *Eyes—Front* given to the last unit to complete its dressing.

6. For inspection, paying compliments when halted, and marching past in slow time ranks will be at four paces distance. The words of command for opening ranks will be OPEN—ORDER—MARCH, and for closing ranks CLOSE—ORDER—MARCH. The word MARCH will in each case be omitted when on the move.

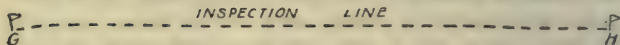
On the command OPEN—ORDER—MARCH, the rear rank will step back two paces and will be dressed. On the command CLOSE—ORDER—MARCH the rear rank will step forward two paces.

Ranks will be opened before the advance in review order commences and closed before any movement is made after the salute.

On the move during a slow march the rear rank will mark time two paces on the command OPEN—ORDER, the third pace being a full pace forward. On the command CLOSE—ORDER the front rank will mark time two paces leading on a full pace with the third.

155. *The inspection or review parade ground*

(NOT DRAWN TO SCALE)



1. Troops will be drawn up for inspection on the *inspection* line G—H, with their centre opposite the centre of the saluting base B—E.

The length of the inspection line will depend on the number of troops on parade and the formation in which they are to be inspected. Its distance from the passing line will depend on the greatest frontage occupied by any unit when marching past, plus the depth occupied by the band or massed bands while playing the troops past.

When larger bodies than a brigade are being reviewed this distance may require increasing to ensure that, when troops are drawn up in line for inspection and commanders are in position at their correct distances in front of the inspecting line, the commander of the parade is at a suitable distance from the passing line in proportion to the dimensions of the parade.

2. The length of the saluting base will not be less than 120 yards or greater than 260, the distance being dependent on local conditions. The march past commences at B and ends at E. The reviewing officer will be behind the centre of the saluting base. Ten yards on each side of him, along the saluting base, are two points "C" and "D," at which the salute will commence and finish respectively.

3. The portion of the passing line outside the saluting base, A—B, should be of sufficient length to enable units to obtain their direction before reaching the saluting base. Units will move up to point "B" in close formation. From that point, units will adopt the formation laid down for them in the orders for the review or inspection.

The portion "E—F" should be of sufficient length:—

- i. To enable all units taking part in the parade **to form up in close column clear of the saluting base after the march past, or**
- ii. If the parade is not required **to return** in close column, to enable the rear of each unit to clear the saluting base before its commander gives the necessary orders for closing and moving off to the flank.

Similarly, the portion "E—F" enables the unit to maintain direction until its rear has cleared the saluting base, when unit commanders give the necessary orders for clearing the passing line if not required to march past in close column.

4. As a rule the passing line will be the same length as the inspection line.

5. All the points "A" to "H" will be marked by flags or markers.

156. General instructions for officers

1. On ceremonial parades, officers will draw their swords after inspecting their companies ; the commander of a parade will not draw his sword unless a senior officer be present on parade.

2. Dismounted officers' swords will be carried as follows :—

- i. *At the halt.*—At the *carry* on all occasions when their men are with sloped arms* or during an inspection at the order. (*See* Sec. 164.) On all other occasions at the *slope*. (*See* Plate XIV.)
- ii. *On the move.*—At the *slope* except :—
 - (a) On the saluting base.
 - (b) When taking post, and returning, and when advancing in review order.
 - (c) During guard mounting and at the Trooping of the Colour.

3. Mounted officers' swords will be carried as in para. 2 above ; for the *carry* see Appendix, Sec. 2, 1, sub.-para. 3, and for the *slope* see para. 2 of the same section.

4. When marching past, in any ceremonial formation with swords not drawn, officers will salute with the hand. The salute will commence at point "C" and finish at point "D." Officers in front of leading formations taking their time from the commanding officer.

* Swords will be at the *carry* during the firing of a feu-de-joie, being brought to the *slope* on the men ordering arms. Officers of Rifle regiments, when brigaded with other infantry, will *carry* when the latter *slope*.

THE COMPANY

157. *Sizing and telling off a company*1. *Sizing.*

Tallest on the Right, Shortest on the Left, in Single Rank—Size.

The whole will break off and arrange themselves in single rank according to their size, the tallest on the right and the shortest on the left, carrying their rifles at the short trail, and will take up their dressing by the right.

Number.

From right to left of the whole company.

**Slope—Arms. Odd Numbers One Pace Forward.
Even Numbers One Pace Step Back—March.**

Number One Stand Fast. Ranks, Right and Left—Turn.

The odd numbers, with the exception of No. 1, will turn to the right, the even numbers to the left.

Form Company. Quick—March.

The whole will step off, the even numbers wheeling round to the right and following the left-hand man of the odd numbers. No. 3 will form up two paces in rear of No. 1; No. 5 on the left of No. 1; No. 7 in rear of No. 5; No. 9 on the left of No. 5, and so on. As the men arrive in their places they will turn to the left, order arms, and take up their dressing.

If space is limited a company may be sized in two ranks, tallest on the flanks, shortest in the centre.

2. *Telling off.*

When the company has been sized it will be numbered from right to left and told off into platoons, platoons being numbered from 1 to 4 within each company. When the number of files is not divisible by four, the outer platoons should be the stronger. A company will be told off into platoons by calling out the numbers of the left-hand men: *e.g.*, No. 15. No. 15 of the front rank will then prove by extending his left forearm horizontally, elbow close to the side; No. 15, left of No. 1 platoon. No. 15 will then drop his arm to the side. No. 29 left of No. 2 platoon, &c.

158. *A company in line saluting**

Fix—Bayonets. Slope—Arms. General Salute. Present—Arms.

On the command **Present—Arms**, all officers will salute as laid down in Sec. 93, 5, iii. The supernumerary rank and the guides present arms with the men.

Slope—Arms. Order—Arms. Stand-at—Ease.

The officers will bring their swords to the *recover* and *carry* as laid down in Sec. 93, 5, iii.

159. *A company marching past*

For this practice the parade ground will be marked on the principles as laid down in Sec. 155.

* In this and the following sections dealing with ceremonial, including guard duties, the commands to *Slope Arms* and *Fix Bayonets* will not apply to men of Rifle regiments, who will remain at the *Order* when halted, will *Present Arms* from the *Order* without *Fixing Bayonets*, and will march past at the *Trail*.

The company will be formed up in line, arms at the *order*, on the inspection line with its centre opposite the point at which the reviewing or inspecting officer will post himself.

The posts of officers are given in Sec. 154, 2.

Slope—Arms. Form Fours—Right. By the Left Quick—March. Left—Wheel.

The company will step off, and, when a convenient distance along the inspection line, opposite B, will change direction to the left.

Company—Halt. Left—Turn. Right—Dress.

When the right of the company arrives on the passing line, the commander will order HALT, LEFT—TURN, the company having turned to its front, the right hand man of the front rank will immediately align himself on the right guide and on the command RIGHT—DRESS, the right guide will dress the company and give the command *Eyes—Front*.

By the Right. Quick—March. Eyes—Right.

The commander, posted as in line, *i.e.*, six paces in front of the centre of the company, will then give the command BY THE RIGHT, QUICK—MARCH. As he reaches point "C" he will give NO. ..., EYES—RIGHT, upon which all, except the right guide, will turn their heads and eyes well to the right looking the reviewing officer in the face as they pass him, and the officers will salute as laid down in Sec. 93, 5, v, (a).

Eyes—Front.

When the rear of the company reaches point "D" the commander will give NO. ..., EYES—FRONT, upon which all

will turn their heads and eyes to the front, and the officers will bring their swords to the *recover* and *carry*, as laid down in Sec. 93, 5, v (a).

The company, if required to resume its original position on the inspection line, will be moved there after it has cleared point "E" in any convenient formation.

REVIEWS

160. *The colours*

1. On all ceremonial parades the following rules as to the carrying of colours will be observed. When at the halt, colours will never be sloped; they will be carried at the *carry* or *order*, according as the troops are at the *slope* or the *order*, but during an inspection, when the men are at the *order*, colours will be at the *carry*. (See Sec. 164.)

When on the move colours will always be carried at the *slope*, except when marching on to or off the parade ground, when on the saluting base, when taking post and returning and advancing in review order, and when marching in slow time down the ranks whilst trooping the colour. At these times they will be at the *carry*.

At the *carry* the colour pike will be carried perpendicularly in the belt, which will be worn over the left shoulder; the corner of the colour will be held in the right hand, which will also grasp the pike level with the forehead.

When at the *order* the colours will be placed perpendicularly on the ground at the right side.

2. The colours will be let fly:—

- i. As the caution is given for a Royal or general salute, and in marching past between points "C" and "D."

- ii. The colour will be lowered (the head of the colour pike to rest on the ground) to those entitled to the compliment, as the men present arms.

3. When colours are lowered in wet or muddy weather, while the end of the pike rests upon the ground, the colours will be held in the hand in order to prevent them from becoming soiled.

REVIEW OF A BATTALION

161. *Formation*

The battalion will be drawn up in line as in Plate XXVI; bayonets will be fixed and arms sloped as in Sec. 158.

When the colonel of the regiment* is present he will be ten paces in front of the officer commanding the battalion. Should the colonel-in-chief also be present, he will be ten paces in front of the former.

162. *Receiving the reviewing officer*

General Salute. Present—Arms.

When the reviewing officer comes to a halt in front of the centre of the battalion, he will be received with a salute, the men presenting arms, the band playing the first part of a slow march, and the drums beating. All officers will salute with the battalion commander (*see* Sec. 93, 5, iii).

Slope—Arms. Order—Arms. Stand at—Ease.

163. *Receiving the Sovereign or a Royal Personage*

Royal Salute. Present—Arms.

As in preceding section, but the band will play the National Anthem or the first six bars of it (*see* King's Regulations).

Slope—Arms. Order—Arms. Stand at—Ease.

* In the case of the Foot Guards, for colonel of the regiment read lieutenant-colonel, and for colonel-in-chief read colonel.

164. *Inspection in line*

The reviewing officer accompanied by the battalion commander, who will ride on the further side from the troops, will then pass down the line from right to left, returning along the rear, the men standing at the *order*.

Company commanders will call their units to *attention* as soon as the reviewing or inspecting officer reaches the unit on their right (or left) and will order *Stand at—Ease* when he has passed the unit on their left (or right) respectively.

The band will play a march until he returns to the right of the line.

The reviewing officer will then give orders for the march past.

165. *Inspection in close column*

When a battalion is to be inspected in close column of companies, as in Plate XXVII, the following will be the procedure :—

i. **Officers and Colours will take Post in Review Order.**

Take—Post. Quick—March.

On the battalion commander's word *Post*, colours and swords will be brought to the *carry*; the officers of Nos. 1 and 2 companies and the colour party will turn to the right and the officers of Nos. 3 and 4 companies to the left, and on the command *Quick—March*, the officers will place themselves five paces in front of the front rank of the leading company, colours in the centre; colours, and officers of No. 1 and 2 companies, moving out by the right, officers of Nos. 3 and 4 companies by the left flank, and sizing themselves on the right and left of the colours respectively the tallest officers on the flanks. The officers of Nos. 1 and 2 companies being

on the right of the colours, the officers of Nos. 3 and 4 companies on the left. The second in command will be on the right, and the adjutant on the left of the line of officers. The line of officers will be dressed by the second in command of the battalion. The commanding officer will be 15 paces in front of the leading company.

ii. The reviewing officer will be received and saluted as laid down in Secs. 162 and 163. The reviewing officer will then carry out the inspection as described in Sec. 164.

iii. Officers and Colours will take Post. Quick—March.

On the battalion commander's word *Post*, colours and swords will be brought to the *carry*. The officers will turn outwards from the centre, the officers carrying the colours turning to the right, and on the command *Quick—March*, the whole will move to their places. The colours will then be brought to the *order* and swords will be *sloped*.

166. A battalion marching past

1. The ground will be marked on the principles described in Sec. 155.

2. *Posts of officers*.—When marching past the reviewing officer by companies, the battalion commander will be 15 paces in front of No. 2 platoon of the leading company, the senior major in front of No. 3 platoon in line with the battalion commander. If the colonel of the regiment* is present he will be 25 paces in front of the centre of the leading company. Should the colonel-in-chief also be present, he will be ten paces in front of the colonel. The adjutant will follow ten paces behind the centre of the rear company. Company officers as in line.

* See Footnote, page 227.

When marching past in close column of companies the battalion commander will be 15 paces in front of the centre of the leading company. The senior major and the adjutant will be ten paces in rear of the centre platoons of the rear company, the senior major nearest the saluting base. Company commanders will take post as the directing guide of their companies, the guide making way by falling to the rear and aligning himself with the rear rank. Officers second in command of companies will be three paces in rear of the centre of their companies, and officers commanding platoons three paces in rear of the centre of their platoons. (*See Sec. 168.*)

3. *Officers' salute.*—In marching past by companies the mounted officers will salute when they arrive at point "C", company officers as in Sec. 159. Officers other than company officers *recover* swords at point "D." The battalion commander, after he has saluted, will move out and place himself on the right of the reviewing officer, and remain there until the battalion has passed; the senior major assuming command.

In marching past in close column the battalion commander only will salute with the sword.

4. *Battalion headquarters and headquarter wing.*—Unless otherwise ordered the personnel of battalion headquarters and headquarter wing, with the exception of those referred to below, will not march past.

5. *Warrant officers and staff serjeants.*—In line and column formations and when marching past the regimental serjeant-major will be two paces in rear of the centre of the colour party.

The bandmaster and serjeant-drummer (carrying his staff at the *trail* as he passes the saluting point) will salute with the right hand on the first occasion of marching past.

6. *Drums and band.*—For marching past the band and drums (or bugles) will move up to 50 paces in advance of the leading company, both formed in two or more ranks. The band will commence playing as soon as the leading company advances on the saluting base. When the band arrives in front of the reviewing officer it will turn to the left, and, after clearing the front, change direction to the right, and halt and turn to the right opposite to the reviewing officer, continuing to play until the rear of the battalion has passed. The bandmaster will face the reviewing officer.

7. *The machine-gun platoon and regimental transport.*—If the machine-gun platoon and regimental transport are ordered to march past, they will do so in the rear of the last company; the machine-gun platoon will march past at a distance equivalent to that maintained by the rear company from the preceding company, followed at the same distance by the regimental transport as directed by the commander of the parade (*see* Sec. 182, 5).

167. *Marching past by companies*

Slope—Arms. On the Right Form Close Column of Companies. Remainder Form Fours—Right. Quick—March.

Move to the Right in Fours. Form Fours—Right. Number One will Direct. Quick—March.

Change Direction Left. Left—Wheel. For—ward. By the Left.

On the command **LEFT—WHEEL**, which will be given when the battalion reaches a convenient distance along the inspection line opposite “B,” a left wheel will be made, the battalion moving forward on the command **FOR—WARD** as soon as the change is completed.

Halt. Left—Turn. Battalion Right—Dress.

On the command **HALT**, which will be given when the battalion reaches the passing line, the right guides will turn to the right and be covered by the adjutant, from a point outside “A” on the passing line, who will give the command *Steady*. On the word *Steady*, the right guides will turn about the command **LEFT—TURN** will be given and the right-hand man of the front rank of each company will immediately correct his dressing by the right guide. On the command **RIGHT—DRESS** the right guides will dress their companies and give the command *Eyes—Front*.

March Past by Companies by the Right.

Company commanders will turn to the left and take up their position six paces in front of the centre of their companies. At the same time officers carrying the colours will take post three paces in front of the centre of the leading company, moving out by the right flank.

The commander of No. 1 will give the command *No. 1 By the Right. Quick—March*, the remaining companies following in succession at 40 paces distance, or as ordered, and acting as in Sec. 159.

The battalion, if required to resume its original position in the inspection line, will be moved there in the most

convenient formation and by the shortest way, as soon as it has cleared the saluting base.

168. *Marching past in close column of companies after the march past by companies*

At the Halt. Form Close—Column.

If the battalion be required to march past in close column the leading company will be halted when it has moved to 38 paces beyond point "E." Close column will be formed by order of the second in command, who will superintend the covering.

Order—Arms.

About—Turn.

Officers, second in command of companies and platoon commanders, will place themselves two paces in rear of their companies and platoons; platoon serjeants, &c., will take post in rear of their platoons, moving by the outer flanks. The guides will step forward and align themselves with the front rank.

Left—Dress.

On the command **LEFT—DRESS** the left guides will dress their companies and give the command *Eyes—Front*.

On the word *front* company commanders will take up the position of the left guide of their companies, and the guide will take up his position behind the company commander in line with the rear rank. (*See Sec. 166, 2.*)

Slope—Arms.

**Advance in Close Column by the Left. Quick—March.
Eyes—Left.**

The battalion commander will give the command EYES—LEFT when he arrives at point “D.”

Eyes—Front.

The battalion commander will give the command EYES—FRONT when the rear company has passed point “C.”

- i. Left guides will not look to the left.
- ii. The battalion, if required to resume its original position on the inspection line, will be moved there in the most convenient formation, and by the shortest way, as soon as it has cleared the saluting base. The second in command, company commanders, adjutant and platoon commanders will resume their respective posts in close column, by the outer flanks, on the command CHANGE—RANKS.

169. Marching past in column of route

1. The battalion commander will march past 15 paces in front of the leading company. Company commanders and company serjeant-majors will march at the head of their companies, the officers second in command and company quarter-master-serjeants in rear; platoon commanders will march in front and platoon serjeants in rear of their respective platoons. The necessary intervals will be made on the march for this purpose. In no case will more than four individuals march abreast.

2. The battalion commander only will salute with the sword, all other officers swords remaining at the *carry*. Company

commanders will give the command *Eyes—Right* (or *Left*) at point "C" and *Eyes—Front* when the rear of the company has passed point "D."

170. *A battalion advancing in review order*

Advance in Review Order. By the Centre. Quick—March.

The battalion having been formed into line at open order with bayonets fixed and arms sloped, will advance by the centre, the band and drums playing, till within 30 paces of the reviewing officer, when it will be halted and ordered to salute in the same manner as when receiving him; after which it will be directed to order arms, and will wait for orders.

CHAPTER XII

DRILL—BRIGADE AND DIVISION

171. *Definitions*

1. *Brigade close column*.—A brigade with its battalions formed up on parallel and successive alignments in close column of companies, with any named distance between battalions.

For distances between companies in close column at ceremonial drill, see Sec. 154, 2.

2. *Line of close columns*.—A line of battalions in close column of companies, with any named interval between battalions.

172. *General rules*

1. The commander of a parade will give the executive words of command for all drill movements intended to be simultaneous (such as handling of arms), except when the size or formation of the parade does not admit of his making himself heard by all concerned.

In this latter case his orders will be passed by unit commanders, who will give the cautions and executive words of command to their own units.

In order that units may work as simultaneously as possible the following procedure will be adopted:—

- i. The parade commander gives a prearranged signal or has a "G" sounded on the bugle.

- ii. The parade commander gives the cautionary words of command.
- iii. Unit commanders repeat the cautionary words of command.
- iv. The parade commander gives the prearranged signal or has a "G" sounded.
- v. Unit commanders give the executive words of command.

When the progress of an order is interrupted, battalion commanders will conform, as quickly as possible, to the movement they see in execution.

When formed up for inspection and in all formations in moving to and from the passing line, intervals and distance of 40 paces will be preserved between battalions.

When marching past, the distances to be preserved between battalions will be as follows :—

When colonel-in-chief,*	}	are on parade—95 paces.
colonel of the regiment and commanding officer		
When colonel-in-chief	}	are on parade—85 paces.
or colonel of the regiment		
and commanding officer		
When commanding officer only is on parade—75 paces.		

3. A battalion will always be named to direct, the remaining battalions preserving their intervals from that battalion.

4. In all interior movements of a brigade, battalions will move to their places by the shortest route, when possible, by the diagonal march.

* In the case of the Foot Guards, for colonel-in-chief read colonel, and for colonel of the regiment read lieutenant-colonel.

5. Staff officers and officers holding personal appointments do not draw swords. They will salute with the right hand as laid down in Sec. 156, 4.

173. *A brigade close column wheeling into line of close columns and vice versa*

A brigade close column can be wheeled into line of close columns, and *vice versa*, by the battalions wheeling as for a battalion wheeling in close column (*see* Sec. 115, 1).

The above movements may be performed either at the halt or on the move.

174. *A brigade close column deploying into line of close columns and vice versa*

The battalion which is the point of formation stands fast. The remaining battalions will be moved by their commanders by the shortest line to the spot where their inner flank will rest, this spot being marked by the adjutant.

If the deployment is in an oblique direction, the battalion of formation will be formed on the required alignment by its commander, in accordance with the instructions of the colonel commandant. The deployment will then be carried out as already described.

Brigade close column will be formed from line of close columns in a similar manner.

In forming brigade close column on a central battalion, the battalions on the right and left will pass into brigade close column left arm to left arm.

175. Marching in line of battalions in close column

When a brigade marches in a line of battalions, a battalion of direction will be named. The remaining battalions will march by their inner flanks, the adjutants notifying to the commanding officers whether the interval is being correctly kept or not. Signals should be agreed on for this purpose; the commanding officer should watch for them, and direct the movement of the battalion accordingly.

176. Deployments

Lines of battalions in close column, at any interval, will deploy into line, each battalion in succession following the procedure for close column, and commencing its deployment on reaching a point, 40 paces, or as ordered, from the mounted officer on the outer flank of the battalion next to it in line.

If a brigade in brigade close column is to deploy into line, the leading battalion will deploy at once; the remaining battalions will move by the shortest lines to the points where their inner flanks are to rest in the line, and will then deploy in the usual manner.

177. Marching in line

When a brigade is required to march in line, each battalion will march by its centre. The adjutant of each battalion, except the battalion directing, will ride on the inner flank to ensure that the correct interval is maintained.

178. *A brigade in line advancing in line of close columns*

Line of close columns will be formed from line as for close column for a battalion.

REVIEW OF A BRIGADE*

179. *Formation*

1. The brigade may be formed with battalions in line at any ordered interval, and proceed in the same manner as a single battalion, or, in line of close columns at any ordered interval, with bayonets fixed, arms at the *order*.

2. *Drums and band*.—When drums and bands are massed they will each be in four ranks.

180. *Receiving the reviewing officer in line of close columns*

Officers and Colours will take Post in Review Order.

Officers and Colours. Take—Post. Quick—March.

The officers and colours of each battalion will take post as directed in Sec. 165, i.

The line of officers will be dressed by the senior major of the right battalion of the brigade. The commanding officer will be 15 paces in front of the leading company.

i. The colonel commandant will place himself 40 paces in front of the centre of his brigade; the brigade staff will

* In Secs. 179–185 the commands given by colonels commandant are printed in **thick type**, those by battalion commanders in *italics*. When commands are given by company commanders it is so stated in the detail.

When it is possible for the colonels commandant to give the executive word of command for simultaneous movements, the orders by unit commanders indicated in the above noted sections will be omitted (*see* Sec. 172).

be ten paces in rear of the colonel commandant, the brigade major ten paces on the right, and the staff captain ten paces on the left.

ii. As the reviewing officer approaches, the infantry will slope arms, and he will be saluted, the men presenting arms, the officers saluting, colours flying, and the bands playing. After the salute the infantry will be ordered to *Order—Arms* and *Stand at—Ease*; the reviewing officer will go down the line, accompanied by the colonel commandant on the side furthest from the troops. Battalion commanders acting as laid down for company commanders in Sec. 164.

iii. If the divisional general is the reviewing officer, his staff will follow that of the colonel commandant at two horse-lengths distance.

Officers and Colours will take Post.

Officers and Colours. Take—Post. Quick—March.

Officers and Colours will take post as directed in Sec. 165, iii.

181. Inspection of a brigade in line

When troops are drawn up in line for review by an officer superior to the colonel commandant after the salute has been given, the colonel commandant accompanied by his staff, will post himself on that flank of his command to which the reviewing officer repairs; he will receive him and accompany him to the limit of his command, riding on the side furthest from the troops; the brigade staff, while passing down the line, will precede the colonel commandant by two horse-lengths.

182. *A brigade marching past*

1. The parade ground will be marked as described in Sec. 155, and the brigade will march past as the officer commanding may direct.

2. *Colonels commandant, staff, &c.*,—When a brigade marches past a reviewing officer superior to the colonel commandant, the latter officer (accompanied by one of his staff officers) will fall out after saluting, and will place himself on the right of the reviewing officer. The remainder of the staff will fall out after saluting and form up on the right of the massed bands. They will then be in a position to observe and be available in case of necessity.

Colonels commandant salute as directed in Sec. 93, 5, v.

The colonel commandant will be 20 paces in front of the mounted officers of the leading battalion, or in line of close columns in front of the centre of the brigade, preceded at a distance of ten paces by his staff, who will be in line, 10 paces apart, the brigade major next the saluting base.

3. *Drums and bands, &c.*—Before marching past, the massed drums and bands will move to the head of the brigade.

When marching past by companies, the massed drums and bands preceding the brigade staff will, on arrival in front of the reviewing officer, form opposite to him, and play till the rear of the brigade has passed. They must be moved off at such a distance in front of the brigade staff as will allow of their clearing the front when opposite the reviewing officer, without checking the mounted officers following them.

In order to ensure units marching past to the correct tune, the bands will cease playing for any unit immediately its rear has passed point "D."

4. When marching past in brigade close column, the massed drums and bands will advance on the outer flank of the brigade close column, parallel with the leading company, halting opposite the reviewing officer; they will play the brigade close column past, and move on again opposite the centre of the rear battalion.

5. *Regimental transport and machine guns.*—Regimental transport and machine guns, if on parade, will be massed 20 paces in rear of the rear battalion. The order in which the machine guns and transport march past being laid down by the officer commanding the parade.

183. *A brigade marching past by companies from line of close columns*

March Past.

Slope—Arms. Form Fours—Right.

When this movement is completed the colonel commandant will give a signal for battalions to move.

Number One will Direct. Quick—March. Change Direction Left. Left—Wheel. Double—March. For—ward. Quick—March.

As each battalion reaches a convenient distance along the inspection line, it will make a left wheel at the double. Each battalion will move forward on the command FOR—WARD as soon as its change of direction is completed and will break into quick time on the command QUICK—MARCH as soon as that pace will not check the battalion in rear.

i. When the leading battalion reaches the saluting base, it will be halted, turned to the left and dressed by the right as in Sec. 167. The remaining battalions will form brigade

close column in rear of the leading battalion, moving by the shortest lines.

ii. Each battalion will then march past as directed in Sec. 167.

iii. If the brigade is then to take up its original position on the inspection line after the march past by companies, each battalion will move to the flank on its commander's order **FOURS—LEFT** and clear the passing line at the double. Then close to close column on a flank company and wheel to the right; after which the battalion will be moved to its position by the simplest method.

The movement to the flank, after clearing the saluting base, will not be made until the rear of the battalion has passed point "F," except in the case of the rear battalion which need only clear point "E."

iv. If, however, the brigade is to return in brigade close column the leading company of the leading battalion will be halted on the passing line at a sufficient distance beyond the saluting base to enable the whole brigade to close up on it in brigade close column, clear of the saluting base.

Close column will be formed, arms ordered, battalions turned about and ranks dressed as in Sec. 168.

184. A brigade marching past in brigade close column

March—Past.

Advance in close column by the left. Quick—March.

Each battalion will march past as directed for a battalion in close column in Sec. 168.

The colonel commandant will salute as directed in Sec. 93, 5, v. Staff officers will salute as directed in Sec. 172, 5.

As the rear of each battalion passes point "A," the battalion will FORM FOURS—RIGHT and double till it has cleared the front of the battalion following. It will then wheel at the point "H" and resume its original position on the inspection line; officers and colours taking post in review order.

On ceremonial parades where more than one unit takes part the regulation length of pace and time of marching as laid down in Sec. 21 will be adhered to.

185. *A brigade advancing in review order*

If required to advance in review order by the reviewing officer, battalions may be formed in line of close columns at any interval, arms at the slope, and the officers and colours in front, as described in Sec. 180.

The line of close columns will then advance, the bands and drums playing, and when at a convenient distance from the reviewing officer it will be halted and ordered to salute, after which it will be directed to order arms, and will wait for orders.

REVIEW OF A DIVISION

186. *General rules*

1. *Formation*.—A division may be formed up for review as its commander or the inspecting officer may direct and will proceed as described in Secs. 179 *et seq.*

2. *Position of the general, the staff, &c.*—The divisional commander will be in front of the centre of his division, 30 paces in front of the line of colonels commandant; the commanders of infantry brigades, the commander of the divisional artillery, and the commander Royal Engineers will be in line, 40 paces in front of the general line. Should two or more companies of the R.A.S.C. or R.A.M.C be attached to the division the position of the commanders will also be as

described for commanders of infantry brigades. The divisional staff will be drawn up in three lines, ten paces in rear of the general officer commanding the division, distances and intervals ten paces, thus:—

	G.O.C.	
	A.D.C.	
OFFICERS		OFFICERS
ADMINISTRATIVE STAFF		GENERAL STAFF

3. When the reviewing officer moves to the right of the line, the divisional general, accompanied by his staff, will act as in Sec. 181, colonels commandant will remain in position in front of their brigades.

4. The bands of the division should be massed in rear of the centre of the division, or as the G.O.C. may direct, to play a Royal or other salute, resuming when necessary their position in rear of their respective brigades as soon as the Royal Personage or reviewing officer moves to the right of the line.

5. The order of march of the staff, when passing down the line will be as follows, the distance and intervals being ten paces:—

	A.D.C.	
OFFICERS		OFFICERS
ADMINISTRATIVE STAFF		GENERAL STAFF
	G.O.C.	

187. *A division marching past*

1. A division will march past as the divisional commander may direct, and on the principles laid down for a brigade.

2. *Generals, colonels commandant, &c.*—When a division marches past, the commander of the division only will move to the saluting point, accompanied by his senior staff officer.

The divisional staff will act as in Sec. 182, 2. Staffs of lower formations will take up their original positions on the inspection line.

3. *Position of staff.*—The general and staff will march past 30 paces in front of the commander (or staff) of the leading unit in the following order, distances and intervals ten paces :—

	A.D.C.	
OFFICERS		OFFICERS
GENERAL STAFF		ADMINISTRATIVE STAFF
	G.O.C.	

No officers other than the above will join the divisional staff.

Commanders only will draw swords and salute as in Sec. 93, 5, v.

Staff officers and officers holding personal appointments salute as directed in Sec. 172, 5.

4. *Distances* will be as follows, or as the divisional commander may direct ;—When marching past by companies 80 paces will be preserved between arms and brigades.

5. The bands of the leading brigade will commence playing as the brigade moves off, those of succeeding brigades as soon as the band of the brigade in front of them ceases to play. (*See Sec. 182, 3.*)

6. When no mounted band is available to play past the divisional staff and divisional troops suitable arrangements

must be made to ensure that a band is in position to play these troops past.

188. Review of any larger body of troops than a division

1. *Formation.*—The troops will be formed up for review as the G.O.C.-in-C. may direct.

2. *Position of generals, colonels commandant and staffs.*—Colonels commandant, &c., with their respective staffs, will be posted as in Sec. 181 ; divisional commanders with their staffs, will take post as laid down in Sec. 186, 2.

The G.O.C.-in-C. will be in front of the centre of the line, 50 paces from the divisional commanders ; the staff will be drawn up in three lines, ten paces in rear of the G.O.C.-in-C. at intervals of ten paces, ten paces being preserved between lines, thus :—

		G.O.C.-in-C.		
	C.O.S.G.S.		O. i/c ADMN.	
	A.Q.M.G.	D.A.Q.M.G.	A.A.G.	
G.S.O.3	A.D.C.	A.M.S.	A.D.C.	G.S.O.2

No other officers will join the staff of the G.O.C.-in-C. ; officers of the services other than those specified above, and officers attached to the staff will form up behind the saluting flag, or at any other convenient point.

3. *Bands* will be massed by divisions or brigades as the G.O.C.-in-C. may direct, and will resume their positions, if necessary, as soon as the Royal Personage, or reviewing officer, moves to the right of the line.

4. When the reviewing officer moves to the right of the line the G.O.C.-in-C. accompanied by his staff, will act as in Sec. 186, 3; divisional commanders will accompany the reviewing officer during the inspection of their divisions; colonels commandant will remain in position in front of their commands.

5. *Order of march when passing down the line.*—The order of march when passing down the line will be as follows, distances and intervals as in para. 2 above :—

	A.M.S.			
G.S.O.2	A.D.C.	A.D.C.		G.S.O.3
A.A.G.		D.A.Q.M.G.		A.Q.M.G.
	O. i/c ADMN. and C.O.S.G.S.			
	G.O.C.-in-C.			

In order to accommodate the divisional staff when passing down the line, it may be found convenient for colonels commandant to post themselves in the centre of and in line with their staff (*see* Sec. 180, i).

189. *A larger body of troops than a division marching past*

1. The troops will march past on the principles laid down for the division, and in such order as the general officer commanding may direct. Distances, 120 paces between divisions.

2. The G.O.C.-in-C. and his staff will march past at the head of the troops, 30 paces in front of the commander

(staff or bands) of the leading unit in the following order, distances and intervals ten paces :—

A.M.S.		
G.S.O.3	A.D.C.	A.D.C. G.S.O.2
A.Q.M.G.	D.A.Q.M.G.	A.A.G.
C.O.S.G.S.		O. i/c ADMN.
G.O.C.-in-C.		

3. The G.O.C.-in-C. will move out to the saluting point accompanied by two of his staff officers. The remainder will act as in Sec. 187, 2. Divisional or brigade commanders will not fall out unless ordered.

190. *Royal Review—Order of march*

1. The following will be the order of march at a Royal Review :—

- i. A Staff Officer.
(Interval of 50 yards.)
- ii. The Sovereign.
Royal Standard Bearer.
The G.O.C. (in attendance).
- iii. Princes of the Blood.
- iv. Equerries in Waiting to the Sovereign.
- v. Gold Stick in Waiting, Master of the Horse (if present).
- vi. Chief of the Imperial General Staff, Adjutant-General, Quartermaster-General, Master General of the Ordnance.
- vii. Full Colonels of regiments on parade, if present.
- viii. Aide-de-Camp General to the Sovereign.
- ix. Crown Equerry, Silver Stick in Waiting.

- x. Foreign General Officers and Military Attachés of Foreign Powers.
- xi. Equerries and Attendants upon Foreign Princes.
- xii. Aides-de-Camp to The Sovereign.
- xiii. Equerries in Waiting to Princes of the Blood.
- xiv. Aides-de-Camp to Princes of the Blood.
- xv. General officers and colonels in successive order according to rank and seniority.
- xvi. Staff officers to general officers present.
- xvii. Indian orderly officers to The Sovereign (if present).
- xviii. Silverstick Adjutant, Regimental Adjutants of Foot Guards (if present).
- xix. Royal grooms.
(Interval of 50 yards.)
- xx. Detachment of cavalry.

Note.—On all occasions when the King is to be present at a review, the proposals for the order of march of the Royal procession are invariably to be submitted for His Majesty's pleasure.

2. Officers on the staff or in attendance upon His Majesty or of Royal or other persons who are received with a Royal salute in accordance with King's Regulations, do not salute when the National Anthem is played for the Royal salute.

CHAPTER XIII

GUARDS, GUARDS OF HONOUR AND LINING
STREETS191. *General rules*

1. *Turning out.*—When guards turn out they will move at the double and fall in with sloped arms, rifle regiments at the order, rear rank four paces behind the front rank. The senior N.C.O. will fall in on the right of the guard, being covered in the rear rank by the next senior N.C.O., or, if the guard is in single rank, the next senior N.C.O. will fall in on the immediate left of the senior N.C.O. The bugler two paces on the right flank of the senior N.C.O.

When the guard is commanded by an officer he will be three paces in front of the centre of the guard.

2. *Turning in.*—Arms will be sloped. (Rifle regiments will *shoulder arms.*) The commander of the guard will give the command *Dis—miss.*

It is unnecessary to close ranks before dismissing.

3. If a guard mounts with a colour it will be told off in two divisions and the posts of officers will be as laid down for a Guard of Honour in Sec. 197.

The officer carrying the colour, when present, will march in the centre of the guard.

4. Guards, including reliefs, round and patrols, will march with sloped arms and bayonets fixed, those belonging to

rifle regiments with trailed arms. In wet weather arms will be carried at the *secure*.

5. Guards, rounds, reliefs, and other troops on the march meeting Their Majesties the King or Queen, when accompanied by an escort or driving to or from an official ceremony or on any official or state occasion, will *halt*, turn in the required direction, and *present arms*. On all occasions, and to other persons entitled to a salute, they will pass on with *sloped arms* (rifle regiments at the *trail*) paying the compliment "*Eyes—Right*" (or *Left*).

They will never halt and present arms to Their Majesties when driving in motor cars.

6. Guards will not turn out after retreat or before reveille, except at tattoo, on the approach of an armed party, in cases of an alarm, or to receive grand or visiting rounds, nor will they during this period pay any compliments, except to grand rounds, to whom they will present arms.

7. Sentries will not present arms to any armed party (except grand rounds) after dark. As long as sentries can discern an officer, they will halt and turn to their front on his approach, and pay the correct compliments.

8. All guards will turn out at the commencement of *Reveille*, *Retreat* and *Tattoo* sounding, the commanders will then inspect them.

9. For compliments paid by sentries *see* King's Regulations.

192. *Relieving, posting or dismissing a guard*

1. When the ground admits, a new guard will advance in line towards the front of the old guard, and will be drawn up

when possible 15 paces in front, or when not possible, six paces from the left of the old guard facing in the same direction.

2. As soon as this is completed, the old guard will present arms, and the new guard will return the salute. Commanders of guards will, if officers, salute with the sword; if N.C.Os., present arms at the same time as the men.

3. Both guards will in like successive manner slope arms, order arms, and stand at ease.

4. The guard will then be told off and the first relief sent out. When the first relief of the new guard is sent out, a corporal belonging to the old guard will accompany it to bring in the relieved sentries. If the relief moves in line, he will be on the left flank, if in file (or as in file) he will be at the head of the front rank of files (or rank). As soon as all the sentries are relieved, the two corporals will change places and the corporal of the old guard will assume command. While the relief is marching round, the commander will take over the property in charge of the guard according to the list on the inventory board, at the same time checking the list in the old guard report.

5. When the reliefs have returned, and all the men of the old guard have fallen in, both guards will be called to attention and ordered to slope arms.

6. The old guard will then move off, in line if possible otherwise in fours or file, the new guard presenting arms; the commander of the old guard giving "*Eyes—Right (or Left).*"

7. When the old guard is clear of the ground, the new

guard will slope arms and if not already there, will move on to the same alignment occupied by the old guard. Arms will then be ordered and the commander of the guard will read and explain the orders of the guard to his men; these orders will also be read and explained to the men forming the first relief when they come off sentry. The men of the guard will then be dismissed to the guard room.

8. If it is necessary to pay compliments during guard mounting, words of command will be given to both guards by the senior officer or N.C.O. on parade.

9. The old guard will be marched to the regimental parade ground and after inspection dismissed.

193. *Procedure for guards (and piquets) turning out for inspection by an officer*

1. On the command *Guard turn out* the guards (and piquets) will double out of the guard room and fall in normally in single rank with sloped (or shouldered) arms (piquets at Attention), guards on the right, piquets on the left; N.C.Os. in charge of guards and piquets on the right of the guards and piquets respectively. The senior N.C.O. on the extreme right. The bugler two paces on the right flank of the senior N.C.O.

2. The guards (and piquets) having fallen in as above, the senior N.C.O. will take three paces forward and turn left about and order FROM THE RIGHT OF GUARDS (AND PIQUETS) NUMBER.

The guards and piquets will number off simultaneously from the right of their respective guards (and piquets).

3. The senior N.C.O. will then inspect the guards (and piquets) and having finished his inspection will fall in on the right of the guard, salute, and report all correct or otherwise to the orderly officer.

4. The inspecting officer will inspect the guards, piquets, guard room, cells, &c., accompanied by the senior N.C.O. who will take one pace forward, turn to his left and then accompany the orderly officer.

When the inspection is completed the senior N.C.O. will resume his original position.

Having received instructions from the orderly officer to **TURN IN** the guards (and piquet) the senior N.C.O. will act as laid down in Sec. 191, 2. He will then turn towards the officer and salute. Having completed his salute he will accompany the orderly officer on his inspection of the sentries.

5. When a guard is turned out for inspection by a station or brigade commander, the guard will fall in as in Sec. 191, 1, but on the approach of the officer, the commander of the guard will order **GUARD. PRESENT—ARMS**, when the guard, including the N.C.O. in charge, will present arms. This will be followed, after a suitable pause, by **GUARD. SLOPE—ARMS**.

The N.C.O. in charge will remain on the right of the guard during the inspection by the station or brigade commander.

On receiving instructions to turn in the guard the procedure will be as in Sec. 191, 2.

194. Relieving and posting sentries, and marching reliefs

1. Relieving and posting sentries.

Relief—Halt.

On the approach of the relief, the sentry, with his rifle at

the *slope*, will place himself in front of the sentry box. The corporal of the relief will halt the relief at about two paces from the sentry.

The new sentry will then move out from the relief and fall in on the left of the old sentry, facing in the same direction, the old sentry will then give over his orders, the corporal seeing that they are correctly given and understood.

Pass.

The old sentry will move to his place in the relief, and the new sentry will close two paces to his right.

Relief. Quick—March.

The relief will be marched off.

2. When a sentry who is to be posted on a new post has reached the post assigned to him, he will be ordered to halt and face in the required direction. The corporal will then read and explain the orders to him.

The object for which he is posted, the front of his post, and the extent of his beat, will be clearly pointed out to a sentry when first posted.

3. Sentries when moving off on their beat will turn to the right and left correctly and will move in quick time at the *Slope*, rifle regiments at the *Trail* (or *support*). On arrival at the end of their beat they will halt and turn about by making two distinct turns outwards to the right or left as the case may be. When halted they will face their front and stand properly at ease. They will not halt on their beat except in front of the sentry box, unless to pay a compliment.

Sentries must not quit their arms, lounge or converse with anyone on any pretence, nor may they stand in their sentry boxes in good, or even in moderate weather.

They will always be alert to pay compliments.

4. *Marching reliefs*.—Reliefs of fewer than four men will be formed in single rank, when of four men, or upwards, they will be formed into two ranks. (In streets, or narrow places, reliefs should always be marched in single rank.) When marching in line, the corporal will be two paces in rear of the centre; when in file (or as in file) he will be on the right of the rear file (or man).

195. *Sentries challenging*

1. A sentry will challenge a person or party approaching his post, when it is necessary for his own safety, or when he is doubtful or suspicious as to whether the person or party approaching is authorized to pass. Challenging is also necessary in special cases, such as that of a sentry posted on a fortress or prison, or when a password has to be delivered.

2. When challenging on the part of a sentry is necessary, it will be carried out as follows :—

- i. When a person or party approaches the post, the sentry will, as soon as the person or party is within speaking distance, call out, *Halt*, and when the person or party has halted, *Advance one*,* at the same time coming to *On-Guard*; if, and when, the sentry is satisfied as to the identity of the person or party he will say *Pass Friend—All's*

* *Advance one* means that one person only is to advance for identification

well; remaining *On-Guard* till the person or party has passed.

- ii. If in answer to the challenge the sentry receives the reply *GRAND* (or *VISITING*) *ROUNDS*, he will call out *Stand Grand* (or *Visiting*) *Rounds—Advance one*,* the sentry remaining *On-Guard* until he has identified the person approaching or until he has received the password. When satisfied the sentry will say *Pass Grand* (or *Visiting*) *Rounds—All's well*; presenting arms as they pass in the case of grand rounds, sloping arms as they pass in the case of visiting rounds.

Where challenging is unnecessary, grand or visiting rounds will inform the sentry as to their identity on approaching his post, the sentry presenting arms in the case of grand rounds and remaining at the slope in the case of visiting rounds.

3. If the sentry is on or near the guard-room door, he will proceed as in Sec. 196.

196. *Guards turning out at night* -

1. Where the sentry is not directed to challenge, grand or visiting rounds will inform the sentry as to their identity on approaching his post, the sentry will then call: *Guard—Turn out*. The guard will fall in with bayonets fixed and arms sloped, and the commander will call out: *Advance, Grand* (or *Visiting*) *Rounds—All's well*; to grand rounds he will present; to visiting rounds he will remain at the slope.

* *Advance one* means that one person only is to advance for identification.

2. Where the sentry challenges and there is no password to be delivered, the same procedure as above will be observed, the sentry turning out the guard on receiving the reply GRAND (or VISITING) ROUNDS to his challenge.

3. If there is a password to be given, a corporal or serjeant with a blank file of the guard will double out and when about ten paces from the rounds will order the file to halt; bring them to the *On-Guard*, and will then give the challenge: *Who comes there*. The reply will again be, GRAND (or VISITING) ROUNDS; the N.C.O. calling: *Stand, Grand (or Visiting) Rounds—Advance one*. Rounds will then in a low voice give the password, which the N.C.O. alone will carry, in double time, for verification to the commander of the guard. If correct the commander of the guard will call out, *Advance, Grand (or Visiting) Rounds—All's well*. The file will then double back to the guard, and rounds will advance to the guard, which will present arms to grand rounds.

197. Guards of Honour

1. Guards of Honour, unless otherwise ordered, consist of 1 major or captain, 1 lieutenant, 1 2nd lieutenant with the colour, 2 company serjeant-majors or colour-serjeants, 2 serjeants and 100 rank and file. They are accompanied by the band and drums (and pipers, if any) of the battalion. The guard is formed into two divisions, each of 25 files, and each division is subdivided into two sections.

A Guard of Honour will be sized and equalized as laid down for a company (Sec. 157). Where possible it will be formed up facing the direction from which the Personage on

whom it is mounted will approach. The band and drums will be in rear of the centre of the guard, if space permits, otherwise they will be on the flank.

2. The posts of the officers are as follows :—

- i. *In line*.—The commander three paces in front of the second file from the right, the lieutenant three paces in front of the second file from the left, the 2nd lieutenant (with the colour) three paces in front of the centre.
- ii. *In column of divisions*.—The commander six paces in front of the first division; the lieutenant three paces in front of the 2nd division; the 2nd lieutenant (with the colour) three paces in front of the 1st division.
- iii. *In column of sections*.—The commander three paces in front of the 1st section, the lieutenant three paces in front of the 4th section, the 2nd lieutenant (with the colour) between the 2nd and 3rd sections.
- iv. *In column of fours*.—The commander three paces in front of the leading four, the lieutenant on the proper front of and three paces from the centre of the 2nd division, the 2nd lieutenant (with the colour) between the two divisions.

3. If a Guard of Honour is ordered to march past it will do so in column of divisions, if space permits, otherwise it will march past in column of fours. Words of command will be given by the commander.

In all interior movements, words of command to the 1st division will be given by the senior company serjeant-major or colour-serjeant, to the 2nd division by the lieutenant, and to sections by the section commanders.

4. After paying the compliment to the Personage on whom it is mounted the guard will *slope arms* and *order arms*, the colour remaining at the "*Carry.*"

When the guard is inspected it will stand at the *order* and the commander will invariably accompany the Personage on whom it is mounted, walking next to him, on the further side from the rank being inspected, round the ranks.

5. Guards of Honour of 2 officers and 50 rank and file will be formed into two divisions but will not be sub-divided into sections.

The posts of the commander and the officer carrying the colour will be as detailed above.

198. *Infantry lining the streets at Royal processions, &c.*

1. The battalion commander and his adjutant will be on the flank of the unit which the procession approaches first, and the senior major on the other flank.

2. Officers and the colours will be on the off side of the road, looking in the direction in which the procession is moving. Company commanders will be on the flank of their companies which the procession approaches first, one pace from the ranks towards the centre of the road. Ranks will usually be one pace from the kerbstone. When a procession is to return, company commanders will take post on the other flank of their commands as soon as it has passed the first time, all other officers and colours will cross the road so as to leave the carriage way clear. Serjeants, who will fix bayonets and present arms with the men, will be in the ranks.

3. Bands and drums must not be placed at points where the traffic is left open by the police. They will be placed opposite to the colour party when circumstances admit, otherwise they should be conveniently placed where a side street opens into the route of the procession. The leading rank must be in line with the other troops lining the route.

The ground is usually allotted to battalions in accordance with the instructions of the general officer commanding. Markers must be sent forward by units before the arrival of troops, to show the extent occupied by each company after the extension is completed.

When the troops arrive, each company is to be marched in close order to its place and each company commander will then extend his company on the ground allotted to it.

Allowance must be made in calculating the extensions of companies for the presence of all serjeants in the ranks, for the spaces where cavalry is posted, as no infantry will stand in front of the cavalry, and also for large curves in the route which make a considerable difference.

4. The company commander on the flank which the procession first approaches receives orders from the battalion commander as to when the compliment is to be paid. Compliments are paid on the executive word of company commanders in succession as the procession approaches their flank, or of junior commanders if the extension is wide and the men have difficulty in hearing.

Commands for compliments to be paid should be given when the coach or carriage of the Personage to be saluted is 20 paces from the nearest flank of the unit paying the compliment.

CHAPTER XIV

TROOPING AND PRESENTATION OF COLOURS,
FEU-DE-JOIE, AND FUNERALS

TROOPING THE COLOUR

199. *General rules*

1. At the hour appointed for the ceremony, points will be placed for marching past, and the guards of the necessary number and strength, furnished by companies, will be formed on the parade ground, column by the left, with unfixed bayonets facing right so that on receiving the command *At the Halt, Left—Form* the guards will directly face the saluting base and be at a suitable distance from it.

2. The senior warrant officer or N.C.O. with each guard will take command of it, being posted on the right of the front rank. Warrant officers and N.C.Os. will fix bayonets, present, &c., with the men. Markers giving points will do so as laid down in Sec. 154, 5.

3. The men detailed for keeping the ground will slope and present arms with the line on all occasions acting on the word of command of the battalion commander. When the troops are marching past they will present arms to the colour as it passes by word of command of their own commanders. At all other times the men will order arms and stand at ease,

except when required to move for the purpose of keeping people back, when they will do so with sloped arms.

200. *Forming into line to the left*

The adjutant will order :—

Guards—Attention.—Slope Arms. At the Halt on Markers Left—Form. Quick—March.

The guards will be formed into line facing the saluting base. The markers, who will act as in Sec. 154, 5, will be covered by the regimental serjeant-major. The left guide of each guard will double out on the command **Quick—March** and will superintend the dressing of the men in the front rank as they arrive in their places, giving the command *Eyes—Front* and resuming his place on completion. When the guards are all dressed, the regimental serjeant-major will give the command *Steady*, upon which the markers will double into their positions in the supernumerary rank. The regimental serjeant-major will take up his position in the supernumerary rank in rear of the left guide of No. 2 guard.

201. *Position of colour, officers, band and drums*

1. The colour will be placed at a distance of two guards in front of the left of the line, facing right, in charge of a serjeant and a double sentry. The serjeant in charge holds his rifle throughout. All their movements must correspond, the right sentry, who will be the front rank man of the file, giving the time; they must turn outwards together when at three paces from the colour, and inwards when ten paces from it, always turning towards the front; these sentries will

order arms, stand at ease, come to attention, and slope with the men in line, except as directed in Sec. 202. The men of the right file of the first guard will be mounted as sentries on the colour, the serjeant and sentries resuming their places with the right guard, after receiving the colour, as described in Sec. 202.

2. The band will be formed in the front of the right of the line, at right angles to it, facing inwards opposite the colour ; the drums will be in front of the left of the line, the rearmost rank being ten paces in front of the colour, facing the band.

3. There should be a major or captain, lieutenant, and a 2nd lieutenant to carry the colour with the right guard, which will form the escort to receive the colour. There will also be a supernumerary serjeant with this guard, who, with the serjeant detailed in para. 1 above will form the colour party during the march past. When there are not sufficient officers the major or captain and 2nd lieutenant for the colour only will be with the right guard ; and the lieutenant commanding the second guard will take command of the escort when it goes for the colour, moving in front of the centre of the first guard. The change of positions being effected on the drummer's call.

4. The position of company officers will be as follows :—

i. When the troops are at open order, and when on the saluting base in marching past in slow time, the captain will be three paces in front of the second file from the right, the lieutenant three paces in front of the second file from the left, and the 2nd lieutenant three paces in front of the centre of the guard.

ii. At other times, as in line or column, except that the

captain will be at six paces in front of the centre of his guard, and the subalterns in line with the supernumerary rank in rear of the centre of the right and left half guard. For the position of the 2nd lieutenant in marching past *see* Sec. 203.

iii. The 2nd lieutenant will carry the colour as directed in Sec. 160.

iv. If only one officer is present with the guard, he will be three paces in front of the centre of his guard when at open order, and six paces in front of the centre of guard when at close order.

202. *Trooping the colour*

1. *The adjutant will order—*

Guards Open Order—March. Rear Rank, Right—Dress.

On the command **March**, the rear and supernumerary ranks will step back two paces—the rear rank of each guard will be dressed by the right marker of the guard who will give the command *Rear Rank, Eyes—Front* and fall in.

Warrant and Non-Commissioned Officers Commanding Guards to the—Front.

All warrant officers and serjeants commanding guards will take two paces forward and recover arms, the right-hand man of the rear rank of each guard filling up the intervals left by his commander.

Quick—March. Inwards—Turn.

The drums will play a quick march. The serjeants will step off, and when near the saluting base on which the guards

are to march past, they will receive the command **Inwards—Turn**, on which the serjeant in the centre will halt and turn about, and then bring the rifle to the slope.

The remaining serjeants will turn inwards, and will halt and turn towards the line as they close on the centre serjeant, sloping arms after halting and turning. The drums will cease playing before the command **Inwards—Turn** is given.

Order—Arms. Stand at—Ease.

The guards and serjeants will order arms and stand at ease.

The drums will beat the assembly, marching across the parade; they will march through the intervals of the band, and will countermarch and halt in rear of it.

As the assembly commences, the officers, with carried swords, will fall in, facing the line three paces in front of the serjeants, and three paces from each other, taking up their dressing from the centre.

Guards—Attention. Fix—Bayonets. Slope—Arms.

Warrant officers and N.C.Os. will fix bayonets.

The guards having sloped arms, the adjutant will hand the detail of the duties over to the battalion commander, draw his sword and take his post on the right of the line of officers.

2. The battalion commander will draw his sword and give the following words of command* :—

* From this paragraph to the end of Sec. 205 the words of command given by the battalion commander are printed in thick type, and, when referred to in the detail in SMALL CAPITALS; those given by subordinate commanders in *italics*.

**Officers, Warrant and Non-Commissioned Officers.
Outwards—Turn.**

The officers, warrant officers, and serjeants will turn outwards, the former recovering swords, and the latter their rifles after turning.

Take post in front of your Guards. Quick—March.

The officers, warrant officers, and serjeants will step off, halting and turning towards the line opposite their places in line; after turning towards the line, the former will carry swords and the latter slope arms.

To your Guards. Slow—March.

On the command MARCH the officers, warrant officers, and serjeants will step off in slow time, the officers recovering swords as they take the first pace, and the warrant officers and serjeants recovering rifles as they take the first and third paces. The band will play a slow march as the officers, warrant officers, and serjeants march to the line, and cease playing as the latter arrive at their places.

When the officers arrive at three paces from the line they will mark time; the warrant officers and serjeants will mark time when on the right of their guards, the original right-hand men of the rear rank dropping back into their places. The adjutant, with carried sword, will move to his place on the left of the line, in line with the officers, marching on their right.

Halt. About—Turn.

The officers, warrant officers, and serjeants will halt and turn about, the former carrying their swords, the latter sloping their rifles after turning.

The battalion commander will take post 15 paces in front of the centre of the line.

Order—Arms.

Troop.

On the command TROOP the band and drums will play a slow march from the right to the left of the line, and on arriving ten paces from the colour they will counter-march, halt, and cease playing.

The band and drums will then play a quick march from left to right, and will counter-march, halt, and cease playing when in front of the right of the line. As the band and drums approach the right of the line, before counter-marching, a drummer will fall out and place himself two paces from the right of the line, in line with the front rank.

On the band ceasing to play the drummer on the right of the line will beat the drummer's call.

On the first tap of the call, the captain and lieutenant of the right guard will turn inwards, recover swords, and move across in quick time, passing right arm to right arm; the captain passing in rear of the 2nd lieutenant, will place himself three paces in front of the right file of the second guard, the lieutenant three paces in front of the 2nd lieutenant for the colour. Having halted and turned to the front, they will bring their swords to the carry. The drummer having beaten the call, will take post again with the drums in quick time. If there are only two officers with the right guard the escort will be commanded by the lieutenant from the second guard.

The band and drums will be placed in front of the right guard, and the regimental serjeant-major will fall in four

paces in rear of the centre file of the escort, and will draw his sword. The supernumerary serjeant will place himself in rear of the second file from the left of the second guard.

Escort for the Colour Slope—Arms. Remainder Stand at—Ease.

The sentries on the colour remain at *attention* with ordered arms.

The lieutenant of the escort will then give the following commands :—

Escort for the colour Close Order—March.

The escort will take close order by the rear and taking two paces to its front, the officers remaining in front, and the markers coming up on the right and left of the rear rank.

By the Left. Quick—March. Left—Form. For—ward by the Centre.

The escort, preceded by the band and drums playing the “British Grenadiers,” will move out the distance of a guard and a half from the line, then form to the left and march by the centre straight towards the colour.

Escort or the Colour—Halt. Open Order—March. Right—Dress.

The escort will be halted at 20 paces from the colour. The band and drums, when near the colour, will wheel to the left, clear the escort, cease playing, halt, and turn about.

On the command *Right—Dress* the men will get their own dressing, the guides standing fast.

Guards—Attention. Slope—Arms.

The sentries will slope arms also.

The regimental serjeant-major will move in quick time to the front by the left flank, receive the colour, and return towards the escort; the 2nd lieutenant for the colour will at the same time move out, place himself four paces in front of the lieutenant passing by his right, and having saluted the colour as the regimental serjeant major brings it up to him, and then having returned his sword, he will receive the colour from the regimental serjeant-major, place it in his belt, and turn about.

The commander of the escort will then give the following words of command:—

Escort to the Colour. Present—Arms.

The escort will then be ordered to present arms, the regimental serjeant-major saluting, the serjeants in the front rank making a half-turn outwards, those in the rear rank making a turn and a half-turn outwards and then porting arms (*see* Sec. 90), and the sentries presenting arms. The band and drums will play “God Save the King,” if the King’s Colour is being trooped; or the first eight bars of a slow march if the regimental colour is being trooped.

Slope—Arms.

The escort will slope arms; the 2nd lieutenant with the colour will resume his post in rear of the lieutenant, passing by his left; the regimental serjeant-major, still keeping his sword drawn, will resume his post, passing by the left flank of the escort; the serjeant, passing by the right flank, will place himself in rear of the 3rd file from the right;

the right guide and marker will close two paces to the right; the sentries will resume their places in quick time as the right file of the escort; the band and drums will turn about.

Escort to the Colour. Left—Form. Slow—March. For—ward by the Centre.

As soon as the regimental serjeant-major, serjeant and sentries above mentioned are in their places, the lieutenant will form the escort to the left, and march off in slow time, preceded by the band playing the "Grenadiers' March." The battalion commander will place himself sufficiently far in front of the line to allow the band and drums to pass in rear of him.

When the band and drums approach the left of the line they will wheel to the left, and will move in front of the line of officers and halt.

As the escort reaches the rear of the drums, the band and drums will receive the command *Slow—March* from the serjeant-drummer.

Right—Turn, Left—Wheel. Left—Wheel.

The lieutenant, when at four paces from the line of commanders of guards, will give the command, *Right—Turn, Left—Wheel*, and on the leading file of the escort arriving opposite the left-hand man of the front rank of the line, will again give the command, *Left—Wheel*.

Guards Present—Arms.

The band will cease playing as soon as the lieutenant has given the second command *Wheel*, and the battalion commander will then order the guards to **PRESENT—ARMS**. After

the guards have presented, the band and drums will recommence playing.

The lieutenant of the escort will move three paces in front of the line of officers, abreast of the 2nd file from the right of the escort; the 2nd lieutenant carrying the colour, will follow him abreast the centre of the escort.

The front rank of the escort will file between the ranks of the guards, the rear rank between the rear and supernumerary ranks.

When the head of the escort arrives at the right of the remainder of the line, the captain will bring his sword to the carry, will take the place of the lieutenant, and will move on with the escort to his original post, the lieutenant will mark time when at his original post, and the 2nd lieutenant with the colour will move on, passing him by the proper front.

Escort to the Colour—Halt. Left—Turn. Left—Dress. Eyes—Front.

The escort will be halted as soon as it has cleared the remainder of the line and the lieutenant having given the command *Eyes—Front*, will take post three paces in front of the second file from the left of the escort.

The captain will then give the commands *Escort to the colour, Present—Arms*. The band and drums will cease playing before the escort is halted, and when near their original position will wheel to the left about on the command of the serjeant-drummer.

Guards Slope—Arms. Close Order—March.

On the command **CLOSE ORDER** the officers, with sword still at the carry, will turn to the left, and on the command

MARCH, they will move to their places at close order. The guards will take close order, the markers of the escort taking post in the supernumerary rank, and the supernumerary serjeant rejoining the escort. The 2nd lieutenant with the colour will take post four paces in rear of the fourth file from the left of the right guard (the centre file of that guard making way for him), the regimental serjeant-major placing himself two paces in rear of him, and one serjeant on each side.

Guards will Retire. About—Turn.

The whole will turn about except the left guides who will turn to their left, officers and supernumerary ranks retaining their places.

At the Halt. Right—Form. Quick — March. Guards will Advance. About—Turn. Left—Dress.

The guards will be formed back into column. The adjutant will cover the guides from the rear of the column and give the command *Steady*.

The band and drums will take up a position in front of the saluting point.

203. *Marching past*

March Past in Slow and Quick Time. By the Left Slow—March.

The column will step off, officers, warrant officers, and N.C.Os. in the supernumerary rank will be in the same alignment, each guard forming to the left when opposite point "B," and again when at forming distance from it. The band will commence to play directly the word *For—ward* is given,

after No. 1 guard has formed round the first point and will stop playing when the last guard is given the command *For—ward* after forming round at point “E.” The battalion commander will place himself at the saluting point and return his sword. The colour party, during the formation at point “E,” will change flank. The officers (including the 2nd lieutenant with the colour) of each guard, during the formation at point “B” will place themselves three paces in front of the front rank, the captain in front of the second file from the right, the lieutenant in front of the second file from the left, and the 2nd lieutenant in front of the centre, subaltern officers moving out by the left flank. The guides will take post on the flanks of the front rank. When his guard has formed round at point “B” each commander of a guard will give the commands *By the Right. For—ward. Open—Order.* The rear and supernumerary ranks will mark time two paces and then move on, markers moving up on the flanks of the rear rank. The guards will then march past the saluting point as directed in Sec. 159.

When at 20 paces beyond the saluting point each captain will give the command *Close—Order*, on which the officers and front rank will mark time two paces, and then move on, markers taking post in the supernumerary rank.

On reaching point “E” each captain will give the command *Left—Form, For—ward—by the Left*, the officers resuming their places in column, the right guides remaining on the right of the front rank.

Guards Quick—March.

As soon as the last guard has formed at point “E,” the band will cease playing and the troops will break into quick time by order of the commanding officer.

The guards will then march past in quick time, the same procedure being followed as for the march past in slow time except that :—

- i. The ranks will be at close order.
- ii. Officers with the exception of the 2nd lieutenant with the colour will not change their positions on reaching point “B.”
- iii. The colour party during the formation at point “B,” and again at point “E,” will change flank.
- iv. The markers will be in the supernumerary rank.
- v. When marching past in quick time, the officers will not salute, but each captain will give the command *Eyes—Right* and *Eyes—Front*, at the same points as in slow time.

Guards Left—Form. For—ward. Halt.

As the left of each guard reaches the point where it rested in line, each captain will give the command *Mark—Time*, and when the last guard is in position the commanding officer will form the guards into line and halt them.

Should anyone be entitled to the *Present*, the battalion commander will open the ranks, and order a Royal or General Salute. The band having been moved to the right of the line.

Order—Arms.

If trooping the colour is to be followed by guard mounting the battalion commander will then give the commands *STAND AT—EASE, OFFICERS FOR DUTY FALL—OUT, STAND—EASY*. Officers for duty, will fall out, salute the commanding officer and return their swords; the regimental serjeant-major will also return his sword.

The 2nd lieutenant will not give the colour into anyone else's charge.

Guard mounting will then be performed in accordance with local instructions issued for the same.

When guards are not being furnished, arms having been ordered, the commanding officer will give the command UNFIX BAYONETS and will then march the troops back to barracks.

PRESENTATION OF COLOURS

204. *General rules*

1. The battalion, except the colour party, band and drums will be drawn up in line.

The place for the colour party will be preserved by three N.C.Os. The old colours with the serjeant and two coverers (see Sec. 154, 3) of the colour party and double sentries, will be in front of the left of the line, at right angles to it, and the band and drums placed as for trooping.

The lieutenants of the colour party will be with the escort (the right company), which in this case will be commanded by a captain.

The new colours, cased, will be in rear of the centre, in charge of two senior company serjeant-majors or colour-serjeants.

2. The old colours will be trooped. On reaching the right of the line, the old colours will take post in front of the escort, which will then advance about ten paces in slow time, form to the left, and in that order proceed to the left of the line, the band will follow, playing "Auld Lang Syne." The escort will return to its place by the rear; the old colours, cased,

being left in rear of the battalion in charge of two company-serjeant-majors or colour-serjeants.

The battalion will then form three sides of a square.

The drums will be piled in the centre ; the new colours will be brought up from the rear by the colour-serjeants in charge, and placed against the pile of drums, one on each side, the King's colour on the right. The senior major and senior lieutenant will then take charge of the King's colour ; the next senior officer and next senior lieutenant of the regimental colour. These officers will uncase the colours and replace them against the drums.

3. The consecration will then proceed.

After the consecration, the senior major will hand the King's colour to the person presenting the colours, from whom the senior lieutenant will receive it, sinking on the right knee the regimental colour will in like manner be handed by the next senior officer and received back by the second senior lieutenant ; both lieutenants will then rise.

4. Any address intended to be made will now follow. Line will then be reformed, the colours, unfurled and turned towards the centre of the line, will be given a general salute. The colour party will then march in slow time to its place in line, the band playing " God Save the King."

5. The battalion will march past, the old colours following in rear of the column.

6. The battalion will form up again in line and advance in review order.

FIRING A FEU-DE-JOIE

205. *General rules*

The troops will be drawn up in line, at open order, rifles at the order, bayonets, except those of the colour party, will not be fixed. The commander of the parade and his staff will be posted in front of the line, at such distance as he may decide, and turned towards it if desired; all other mounted officers will be 15 paces in rear of the line, passing by the flanks of their battalions. Three rounds of blank cartridge will be fired. If artillery are present and are ordered to fire 21 guns, seven guns will be fired before each round. Battalion commanders will give the command **LOAD** immediately the artillery commences firing, and the command **PRESENT** directly the seventh gun has fired, the commanding officer of the right battalion giving the command **COMMENCE** immediately after the command **PRESENT**.

Feu-de-Joie.

Company commanders, officers second in command of companies and officers commanding platoons will step forward three paces, and the rear rank and supernumeraries will step back two paces. The colours will be brought to the *carry* and the colour party will advance six paces by command of the senior officer.

Load.

The company serjeant-majors and company quarter-master-serjeants and men will load, by drawing back the bolt, laying a cartridge in front and forcing the bolt home. The muzzles of the rifles to be inclined upwards, so as to clear the heads of the men in front. Supernumerary rank will order arms.

Present.

Rifles will be brought to the position for firing but at an angle of 135 degrees. Heads will be kept perfectly still and no attempt made to aim.

Commence.

The right-hand man of the front rank will commence the fire, which will run down the front and up the rear as quickly as possible.

When the right-hand man of the rear rank has fired the band will play the first part of "God Save the King," the men remaining at the *present*. Officers will come to the *salute* and remain at the salute while the National Anthem is being played. On the last note of the band battalion commanders will give the word of command **LOAD**, when the men will come to the loading position; the artillery will fire seven guns, and the infantry proceed as above described. Two more rounds will be similarly fired. When the second round is fired the band will play the second part of "God Save the King." When the third round is fired the band will play "God Save the King."

Unload.

At the conclusion of "God Save the King," battalion commanders will give the command **UNLOAD**, when the men will come to the loading position and carry out the motions of unloading, remaining in the loading position, rifles at an angle of 135 degrees.

Order—Arms.

The men will come to the order, the colour party will resume its position in line and order arms by command of the senior officer, the colours being brought to the order.

The mounted officers will then move to their positions as in Secs. 154 and 180, the company officers will resume their normal positions and battalion commanders will give the following commands (on parades of large bodies working on the signal of the general of the division or colonel commandant as in Sec. 172, 1):—

Fix—Bayonets. Slope—Arms. Royal Salute. Present—Arms. Slope—Arms. Order—Arms.

Remove Head-dresses.

Three cheers will then be given.

The head-dress will be removed by and retained in the left hand, which will be raised to the full extent of the arm above the head as the signal for each cheer is given; rifles to be at the *order*. Colours will be dipped while the three cheers are being given. (*See para. 884 and App. V King's Regulations.*)

Unfix—Bayonets.

Note.—If a march past has been ordered to follow the firing of the feu-de-joie, bayonets will not be unfixed.

Close Order—March.

FUNERALS

206. *Funeral exercises*

1. The following exercises are only required by the firing party and troops lining the streets at a military funeral.

The ceremonial instructions to be carried out will be as laid down in paras. 933—942 and Appendix XXI King's Regulations.

2. *To reverse arms from the present.*

Reverse Arms—One.

Bring the right foot smartly up to the left and force the rifle out to the full extent of both arms, the left hand still grasping the rifle in line with the backsight, the right hand at the small of the butt.

Officers with drawn swords will bring the sword to the *recover*.

Two.

Bring the butt of the rifle towards the body passing it inside the left arm and turning the muzzle over to the front so that the position of the rifle is reversed, *i.e.*, the muzzle now pointing to the ground, guard in line with the chest, at the same time change the position of the hands, so that the left hand grasps the rifle at the small of the butt and right hand at the point of balance, the rifle still remaining at the full extent of both arms.

Officers with swords drawn will bring the sword to the *carry*.

Three.

Give the rifle a cant under the left arm-pit, bringing the muzzle to the rear, sling uppermost, keeping the left elbow close to the rifle, rifle close to the body ; then seize the rifle with the right hand behind the body near the band, right forearm parallel to the ground. The rifle should be at an angle of 45 degrees.

Officers with swords drawn will reverse the sword under the right arm, point downwards, edge uppermost. The hilt being grasped with the right hand, the left hand grasping the blade

in rear of the body, forearm parallel with the ground. The blade of the sword to be at an angle of about 45 degrees, right elbow close to the body.

When marching in *slow time* arms will be carried at the *reverse*. When changing from *quick time* to *slow time* arms will be reversed on the command SLOW—MARCH.

3. *To change arms from the reverse under the left arm and vice versa.*

Change Arms—One.

Release the rifle with the right hand and, still holding it with the left hand at the small, allow the muzzle to drop, so that the rifle is in a perpendicular position.

Officers with drawn swords will bring the sword to the *carry*.

Two.

Throw the rifle to the right, releasing it with the left hand and catching it at the small with the right hand, the left hand being cut smartly away to the side.

Officers with drawn swords will pass the sword across the body, gripping the hilt with the left hand and cutting the right hand away to the side.

Three.

Place the rifle under the right arm-pit, sling uppermost, elbow close to the rifle, at the same time seizing the rifle at the band behind the body, with the left hand, forearm parallel to the ground. The rifle to be at an angle of 45 degrees.

Officers with drawn swords will reverse the sword under the left arm-pit, point downwards, edge uppermost, the hilt being

grasped with the left hand, the right hand grasping the blade in rear of the body, forearm parallel to the ground. The blade of the sword to be at an angle of about 45 degrees, left elbow close to the body.

4. *To trail arms from the reverse under the left arm.*

Trail Arms—One.

Quit the rifle with the left hand, and seize it again with the left hand at the point of balance—*i.e.*, round the hand-guard.

Officers with swords drawn will carry the right hand back and seize the blade of the sword 6 inches behind the hilt back of the hand towards the ground.

Two.

Quit the rifle with the right hand, and bring the rifle to the trail at the left side, butt to the front, sling uppermost.

Officers with swords drawn will lower the sword to the right side, and bring the left hand to the side, blade parallel to the ground edge outwards.

When marching in *quick time* arms will be carried at the *trail*. When changing from *slow time* to *quick time* arms will be trailed on the command QUICK—MARCH.

5. *To change arms from the trail at the left side and vice versa.*

Change Arms—One.

Bending the arm from the elbow, bring the rifle to a perpendicular position in front of the left shoulder.

Officers with swords drawn will bend the arm from the elbow and bring the sword to a perpendicular position at the right side.

Two.

Throw the rifle across the body to the right side, and seize it with the right hand, as at present held with the left.

Officers with swords drawn will carry the sword across the body and seize it with the left hand, holding it in a perpendicular position at the left side.

Three.

Bring the rifle to the trail, sling uppermost.

Officers with drawn swords will lower the sword to the *trail* at the left side.

To change from *right* to *left* is the converse of the above.

6. *To reverse arms from the trail at the left side.*

Reverse Arms—One.

Carry the rifle with the left hand to a position underneath the left arm-pit and at the same time seize the rifle with the right hand as described in the position of the *Reverse Arms*.

Officers with swords drawn will carry the sword up with the right hand underneath the right arm-pit, at the same time seizing the blade with the left hand in rear of the body.

Two.

Seize the small of the butt with the left hand.

Officers with drawn swords will seize the hilt of the sword with the right hand.

7. *To rest on your arms reversed from the reverse at the left side.*

Rest on Your Arms—Reversed.

Quitting the rifle with the right hand bring it with the left

to a perpendicular position and lower it until the muzzle rests upon the toes of the left foot. Turn the head and eyes to the right and extend the right hand to the right to the full extent of the arm, palm open, back of the hand uppermost: bring the right hand slowly to the butt, make a pause of slow time, then turn the head and eyes to the front and bring the elbow close to the side. Turn the head and eyes to the left and repeat the above motions with the left hand, make a pause of slow time, then turn the head and eyes to the front and bring the elbow to the side. Make another pause of slow time, then lower the head on the breast.

In performing the above exercise the time should be taken from the right or left hand man, as the case may be, of the front rank.

Officers with swords drawn will allow the point of the sword to fall forward and downwards, and place the point on the ground between the feet, edge to the right. Extend the left arm to the left to the full extent of the arm, palm open, back of the hand uppermost. Bring the left hand slowly to the top of the hilt, and place it on the right, then bring the elbow into the side and lower the head on the breast. (This movement should be done with the men.)

8. The attention from rest on your arms reversed.

Attention.

Raise the head.

9. To reverse arms from rest on your arms reversed.

Reverse Arms—One.

Seize the small of the butt with the left hand.

Two.

Raise the rifle up with the left hand to a position underneath the left arm-pit, at the same time seize the rifle behind the body with the right hand as described in the position of *reverse arms*.

Officers with swords drawn will carry the sword up with the right hand to a position underneath the right arm-pit, at the same time seizing the blade with the left hand behind the back, left forearm parallel to the ground.

10. *To present arms from rest on your arms reversed.*

Present Arms—One.

Raise the rifle with the right hand about six inches, at the same time seizing it with the left hand immediately in line with the magazine, back of the hand downwards and towards the body, thumb to the front.

Officers with swords drawn will cut the left arm to the side and bring the sword to the *carry*.

Two.

Seize the small of the butt with thumb and forefinger of the right hand, thumb to the left, back of the hand downwards and to the front, turning the muzzle upwards.

Officers with swords drawn will bring the sword to the *recover*.

Three.

Turn the rifle over by lowering the butt towards the body and come to the *present*.

Officers with swords drawn will bring the sword to the salute.

11. *To fire the three volleys.*

Volleys (with blank cartridges)—Load.

Bring the rifle to the loading position ; draw back the bolt, lay a cartridge in front of and force the bolt home. The muzzles of the rifles to be inclined upwards so as to clear the heads of the men in front.

Present.

Rifles will be brought to the position for firing but at an angle of 135 degrees. Heads to be kept perfectly still and no attempt made to aim.

Fire.

Each man will at once press the trigger, remaining at the present until the command LOAD or UNLOAD is given.

Two more volleys will be similarly fired.

Unload.

Bring the rifle to the loading position and carry out ten motions of unloading, remaining in the loading position, rifles at an angle of 135 degrees.

APPENDIX

SWORD EXERCISES

1. *Dismounted*

—	When the sword is worn with slings	When the sword is worn with Sam Browne equipment
<p>1. <i>The position of attention</i> Attention</p>	<p>The sword (or empty scabbard) will be held upright by the side, the shoe of the scabbard resting on the ground close to the left foot and just in front of the heel. The left arm will be extended, the hand round the scabbard, thumb in front, fingers in rear, back of the hand outwards.</p>	<p>The scabbard is held close to the side by the left hand, thumb in front, forefinger down the scabbard, remaining fingers in rear, back of the hand outwards.</p>
<p>2. <i>To draw swords</i> Draw Swords—One</p>	<p>Raise the scabbard until the forearm is horizontal, grasping the upper ring with the thumb and forefinger, the remaining fingers closed in the hand, the thick part of the forearm against the side. At the same time pass the right-hand smartly across the body and grasp the handle. Keeping the right forearm horizontal turn the edge to the rear and straighten the left arm in rear of the thigh, the right arm close to the body, shoulders square to the front.</p>	<p>Pass the right hand smartly across the body and grasp the handle of the sword. Draw out the blade until the forearm is horizontal.</p>

SWORD EXERCISES. 1. *Dismounted—continued*

—	When the sword is worn with slings	When the sword is worn with Sam Browne equipment
Two ... (Position of <i>Recover</i>)	Draw the sword slowly from the scabbard, and bring it smartly to the <i>Recover</i> , that is with the blade perpendicular, edge to the left, upper part of the hilt opposite the mouth, elbow close to the body. At the same time bring the scabbard upright by the side.	Carry the shoe of the scabbard slightly to the rear, draw the sword slowly upwards to the front and bring it smartly to the <i>Recover</i>
Three (Position of <i>Carry</i>)	Lower the sword to the <i>Carry</i> , that is with the forearm horizontal, hand in front of the elbow, elbow close to the body, blade perpendicular, edge to the front, hilt resting on the upper part of the hand.	
3. Slope—Swords	Relax the grasp of the last three fingers, and, without disturbing the position of the hand, allow the back of the sword to fall lightly on the shoulder midway between the neck and point of the shoulder.	
4. Return Swords—One ...	From the <i>Carry</i> :— Carry the hilt smartly to the hollow of the left shoulder, blade perpendicular, edge to the left, forearm horizontal. At the same time, with the left hand, bring the mouth of the scabbard forward about three inches, grasping the upper ring with the thumb and forefinger and turning the edge to the left rear.	From the <i>Carry</i> :— Carry the hilt smartly to the hollow of the left shoulder, blade perpendicular, edge to the left, elbow level with the shoulder, at the same time carrying the shoe of the scabbard slightly to the rear.

SWORD EXERCISES. 1. *Dismounted—continued*

—	When the sword is worn with slings	When the sword is worn with Sam Browne equipment
4. Return Swords One— <i>contd</i>	Then by a quick turn of the right wrist, drop the point into the scabbard and resume the position at the end of the first motion of <i>draw swords</i> , shoulders being kept square to the front throughout this motion.	
Two ...	Push the sword lightly into the scabbard, the right hand remaining across the body in line with the elbow, fingers extended and close together, back of the hand up.	
Three ...	Bring the sword to the position of attention, dropping the right hand smartly to the side.	
5. Stand-at-Ease	(i) With the sword in the scabbard. Carry the left foot and the scabbard about 12 inches to the left. So that the weight of the body rests equally on both feet. Then place the palm of the left hand on the top of the hilt and push it to the front to the full extent of the arm, the right arm hanging by the side.	
	(ii) With the sword drawn. As with sword in scabbard except that the palm of the left hand is placed on the mouth of the scabbard instead of on the hilt of the sword and the sword is retained at the <i>slope</i> .	
	At the same time carry the hands behind the back and place the back of the right in the palm of the left, grasping it lightly with the fingers and thumb, and allow the arms to hang easily to their full extent. From the <i>Slope</i> . Carry the left foot about 12 inches to the left, the sword remaining at the <i>slope</i> .	

SWORD EXERCISES. 1. *Dismounted—continued*

—	When the sword is worn with slings	When the sword is worn with Sam Browne equipment
6. Quick— March	Raise the sword (or empty scabbard) smartly with the left hand at the first pace, without stooping or disturbing the position of the body. Grasp the scabbard at the point of balance and hold it at an angle of 45 degrees with the ground, fingers round the scabbard, thumb along the edge, arm fully extended.	The sword (or empty scabbard) is kept steady by the side by the left hand.
7. Halt ...	Lower the sword, or empty scabbard, to the ground and assume the position of attention.	Assume the position of attention.

When the great coat is worn in *Review Order* the sword belt will be worn outside the tunic under the sash; the sword being hooked up and the hilt passed through the slit in the great coat.

2. *Mounted*1. *Draw swords.***Draw Swords—One.**

Pass the right hand smartly across the body over the bridle arm, draw out the blade so as to rest the hilt on the bridle arm, place the sword knot on the wrist, give it two turns inward to

secure it, and then grasp the handle with the right arm close to the body, shoulders square to the front.

Two.

With an extended arm draw the sword slowly from the scabbard and bring it smartly to the *Recover*.

Three. (Position of the *Carry*.)

Lower the sword smartly to the *Carry*, that is, with the guard resting on the hand, blade perpendicular, edge to the front, the first and second fingers gripping the handle under the resistance piece, the little finger behind the handle to steady it, the wrist resting on the thigh and the pommel pressed against the inside of it, upper part of the arm close to the body, and the elbow lightly touching the hip.

2. Slope swords.

Slope—Swords.

Raise the hand until the forearm is horizontal, keeping the upper arm perpendicular, hand in front of the elbow, relax the grasp of the second and third fingers, and allow the sword to fall lightly on the shoulder, midway between the neck and point of the shoulder, the guard still resting on the hand, the little finger still in rear of the hilt.

3. Sit at ease.

Sit at—Ease. (From the *Slope*.)

Place the hands on the front part of the saddle, with the right hand over the left, without removing the sword from the shoulder.

4. Attention.

Come smartly to the position of *slope swords*.

5. Return swords.**Return Swords—One.** (From the *Carry*.)

Carry the hilt smartly to the hollow of the left shoulder, blade perpendicular, edge to the left, forearm horizontal. Then by a quick turn of the wrist drop the point into the scabbard and resume the position at the end of the first motion of *Draw swords*, shoulders being kept square to the front throughout this motion.

Two.

Push the sword lightly into the scabbard, release the hand from the sword knot by giving it two turns outwards, the right hand remaining across the body in line with the elbow, fingers extended and close together, back of the hand up.

Three.

Drop the right hand smartly to the side.

Note.—For saluting with the sword *see* Chapter III.

INDEX

Note.—No reference to drill movements or detail is made in this index. Headings of sections dealing with drill will be found in the Table of Contents.

A.

	PAGE
Adjutant—	
— Position of on ceremonial parades	216, 229, 262
— Position of on drill parades	156
Advances, silent, training in night operations...	213
Advancing under fire, training in methods of ...	200 <i>et seq.</i>
Aircraft, cover from, considerations	203
Alignment, definition of	1
Ammunition, blank, use of in field training	199
Annual Training—	
— Division of year into two periods	28
— General considerations	28 <i>et seq.</i>
— Programmes of, to be framed by commanders ...	28
— Supplementary Reserve, units of	30
— Territorial Army, units of	30
Anthem, National; saluting during playing	113, 251
Arms—	
— Dismissing with	82
— Order necessary to place in empty vehicles ...	187
— Squad drill with	83 <i>et seq.</i>
Army, training of; first object in	15
Attacks, night, training in reconnaissance prior to ...	213

B.

Band—

— Brigade marching past, playing at	242
— Ceremonial, position of with battalion	216
— Divisional ceremonial, marching past	247
— Divisional parade, ceremonial, position	246
— Guard of Honour, position of	261

Band—contd.

	PAGE
— Marching past ; battalion ceremonial	231
— Massed, brigade, review	240
— Mounted, provision of for divisional staff and troops	247
— Review of body of troops larger than a division	248
— Street lining occasions, positions for	263
— Trooping the colour, position	266
Barrage, definition of	1
Barrage, representation of by flags or drums	200

Battalion—

— Ceremonial, position of officers and band	216, 217
— Compliments by on the march, paying of	187
— Deploying, methods of	180
— Distances between, on the march	190
— Drill	154 <i>et seq.</i>
— „ formations	155
— Formations, movements in the field	168
— Frontage, war establishment	168
— Frontage, when deployed in square formation	180
— Inspection in line and close column	228
— Marching past	229 <i>et seq.</i>
— Officers, position of, for ceremonial	227
— Organization of	10
— Recruits, posting to, standard of efficiency before	25, 26
— Reforming after a battle, nucleus for	14
— Review of, ceremonial	227 <i>et seq.</i>
— Scouts, use of	205

Battalion commander—

— Ceremonial parades, position of	216, 217
— Drill parades, position of	156
— Duty, most important in training	17
— Marching past, column of route, position of	234
— Street lining, position of	262
— Tactical formation, responsibility for	179
— Trooping the colour, position of	270

Battalion training—

— Co-operation of other arms during	200
— Field operations, conduct of later stages	199
— Period for	35
Battle drill, general considerations	177 <i>et seq.</i>
Battle drill, method of teaching	182

	PAGE
Berm, definition of	1
Bicycle, salute by soldier when riding	117
Billets, duties in ; training in	210
Bivouacs, duties in ; training in	210
Blank file, definition of	1
Blockhouse, definition of	1
Bombardment, definition of	1

Boots—

— Inspection of, before marching	184
— Instructions to recruits to be given	23
Bound, definition of	1
Breastwork, definition of	1

Brigade—

— Ceremonial drill	236 <i>et seq.</i>
— Marching past	242 <i>et seq.</i>
— Review of, general instructions	240 <i>et seq.</i>
— Staff, marching past, falling out after saluting... ..	242
Bugle calls, use of in peace and war	176

C.

Calls, bugle, use of in peace and war	176
Camouflage, definition of	2
Camps, duties in ; training in	210
Cane, drill with	80 <i>et seq.</i>
Cane, saluting when carrying	115
Cartridges, dummy, use of by instructors and recruits	25
Casualties, disposal of personal property	44
Casualties, practising of during field training	199

Ceremonial—

— Battalion, position of officers and band	216, 217
— Cheers at, method of giving	282
— Company, sizing and telling off	223 <i>et seq.</i>
— Dressing at, method	69, 126, 137
— Drill, brigade and division	236 <i>et seq.</i>
— Formation of companies	215
— Feu-de-joie, firing of ; general rules	280 <i>et seq.</i>
— Funerals, street lining, &c. ; rifle exercises for	282 <i>et seq.</i>
— Guards of Honour, general instructions	260 <i>et seq.</i>

Ceremonial—contd.

	PAGE
— Headquarter wing, marching past	230
— Headquarter wing, position of personnel	218
— Marching, length of pace and time	245
— Officers not marching past; position of	248
— Organization, variations for	215
— Presentation of colours, general instructions	278 <i>et seq.</i>
— Signallers not to carry flags	216
— Street lining, general instructions	262 <i>et seq.</i>
— Trooping the colour, general instructions	264 <i>et seq.</i>
Chain of command, explanation of	10
Challenging by sentries, procedure	258 <i>et seq.</i>
Change of position, definition of	6
Cheers, method of giving at ceremonial	282
Civil employment, prospects on leaving the Army	27
Close column, definition of	2
Clothing, instructions for recruits	23
Collective training—	
— Not to be limited to periods allotted	28
— Object of	28
— Progress of by units	29
— Success depending upon individual training	29
Colour(s)—	
— Carrying of on ceremonial occasions	226
— Party, position of on ceremonial parade	217, 218
— Presentation of, general rules	278 <i>et seq.</i>
— Saluting of when uncased	113
— Trooping of, general instructions	264 <i>et seq.</i>
Column, definition of	2
Column of masses, definition of	2
Column of route, definition of	2
Command(s)—	
— Ceremonial, brigade and division, giving of	236
— Chain of, explanation	10
— Words of, method of giving	47 <i>et seq.</i>
— Words of, timing of... ..	49
— Words of, to be dispensed with in the field	155
Commander—	
— Duty in maintenance of organization	12
— Position of on ceremonial parades	237, 240, 247, 248
— Training responsibilities	17 <i>et seq.</i>

Company—	PAGE
— Control of by signals to be practised	138
— Distance between, on the march	190
— Dressing of, methods	137
— Falling in with, or without, the drum, procedure	138
— Formation, ceremonial	215
— Formations for drill	135
— Formations, movements in the field	152
— Guides, detail of	136
— Marching past, ceremonial	224
— Officers, positions of at trooping the colour	266
— Organization and command of	11
— Principal training unit in the battalion	18
— Saluting, in line	224
— Second-in-command, position of	135
— Sizing and telling off, ceremonial	223, 224
Company commander—	
— Ceremonial parades, not mounted	215
— Ceremonial parades, position of	216, 217
— Field operations, training responsibilities of	192
— Position of	135
— Signal control by, to be practised	136
— Syllabus for field training	193
— Tactical formation, responsibility for	179
Company training—	
— Field operations, conduct of later stages	199
— Field operations, training	192 <i>et seq.</i>
— Period for	34
Compliments—	
— Battalion on the march, paying of	188
— Colours, paying of with	227
— Guard mounting, paying of during	255
— Guards and sentries, by, returning of	188
— Guards, paying of during certain periods	253
— H.M. the King and Queen, paying to on official and State occasions	253
— Paying of by troops; issue of special orders when necessary	189
— Paying of by troops; on the march	187 <i>et seq.</i>
— Paying of, opening ranks for	219
— Paying of to persons approaching from the rear	189
— Platoon, on the march, method of paying	188

Compliments—<i>contd.</i>		PAGE
— Sentries, paying of, by	... ..	253
— Street lining, procedure for paying	... ..	263
— Troops on the march, to Their Majesties The King and Queen	...	187
— Unarmed bodies of troops passing each other	... ..	188
Consolidation, definition of	... ..	2
Control of movement by signals	... .. 173 <i>et seq.</i>	178

Co-operation—

— All arms in battle, object of training	... ..	15
— Other arms during training	... ..	200
— Other arms, necessity for	... ..	15
Cossack post, definition of	... ..	2

Course—

— Annual, weapon training, period for	... ..	34
— Recruit training, division of	... .. 21 <i>et seq.</i>	203
Cover from aircraft, considerations	... ..	202
Cover, use of when firing behind	... ..	2
Covering fire, definition of	... ..	2
Covering, definition of	... ..	2

D**Definitions—**

— Brigade, ceremonial drill	... ..	236
— General	... ..	1
Deploy, to, definition of	... ..	3

Deploying—

— Interval, definition of	... ..	5
— Normal method and intervals for battle drill	... .. 179 <i>et seq.</i>	177
— Quickness in, vital importance of	... ..	174
— Signals to be used for	... ..	20
Depot, regimental, organization for recruit training	... ..	3
Depth, definition of	... ..

Directing flank—

— Column of route	... ..	125, 136
— Rule for on the march	... ..	183
Direction, unit of, definition	... ..	3

Discipline—

— March, general instructions	... ..	183
— Self, in the men, training necessary	... ..	184
— Standard to be maintained during training	... ..	195

Discipline—<i>contd.</i>	PAGE
— Teaching of, method	41
— The bed rock of all training	14
Disease, prevention of; importance of sanitation	29
Dismissing—	
— Company, officers falling out	153
— Parade, with or without arms	82
— Salute by officers, before	123
Distance—	
— Definition and measurement of	3
— Loss of when on the march, regaining of	186
— On the march, measuring of between units	190
Division—	
— Marching past	246
— Review of	245
Divisional ceremonial drill	236 <i>et seq.</i>
Dress, to, definition of	3
Dressing—	
— Battalion, methods for	156
— Ceremonial, method	69, 126, 137
— Company, method	137
— Duty of every man to correct and keep	46
— Instructional and parade purposes, method	69
— Platoon, method	126
Drill—	
— Arms, necessity for smartness	19
— Battalion	154 <i>et seq.</i>
— Battle, general considerations	177 <i>et seq.</i>
— Battle, method of teaching	182
— Battle, to be constantly practised	178
— Ceremonial, brigade	236 <i>et seq.</i>
— Ceremonial, company and battalion	215 <i>et seq.</i>
— Ceremonial, division	246 <i>et seq.</i>
— Company	135 <i>et seq.</i>
— Definition of	3
— Movements, use against uncivilized enemy	168
— Object of	46
— Platoon	124 <i>et seq.</i>
— Recruit's, general instructions for	46
— Smartness in, vital importance of	42

Drill—contd.	PAGE
— Squad	48 <i>et seq.</i>
— Squad with arms	83 <i>et seq.</i>
— Squad without arms	51 <i>et seq.</i>
Drivers, transport, period for training	33
Drum(s)—	
— Brigade, marching past, position	242
— Falling in with, procedure	138
— Guard of Honour, position of	261
— Marching past; battalion ceremonial	219
— Massed, brigade review, formation for	240
— Street lining occasions, positions for	263
— Trooping the colour, position	266
— Use of in marching	57
Dummy cartridges to be used by instructors and recruits	26
Duties in billets, camps and bivouacs, training in	210
Duties special, maintenance of personnel for	18
Duty rosters to be kept by complete units	14

E.

Echelon, definition of	3
Educational training	27
Employment, civil, prospects on leaving the Army	27
Enfilade fire, definition of	3
Entrenching at night, training in	214
Equipment—	
— Instructions to recruits to be given regarding	23
— Order necessary for men to place in empty vehicles	186
— Removal at each halt when marching	185
— Wearing of during early recruit training	25
Esprit de corps, general notes on	42, 43
Exemptions from field training	34
Exercises—	
— Field, to be carried out in marching order	198
— Instructions for preparation and execution of	195 <i>et seq.</i>
— Rifle, details of	83 <i>et seq.</i>
— Rifle, for funerals	282 <i>et seq.</i>
— Rifle, timing of motions	84
— Tactical, as a drill, general remarks	194
Extended order movements for a platoon	130

F.

	PAGE
Feet, mens'; inspection before and after marching	184, 186
Feu-de-joie, firing of, general instructions	280 <i>et seq.</i>
Field engineering, training in	210
" of fire, definition of	3
Field operations—	
Training in, general	191 <i>et seq.</i>
" of the company in	34
Field signals, use of	173
Fighting patrols—	
Command of	210
Employment and use of	204
Fighting spirit general notes on	40, 41
File, blank, definition of	1
" definition of	3
Fire—	
Cover from, considerations on	203
Covering, definition of	2
Enfilade, definition of	3
Field of, definition of	3
Movement, and; the importance of training in	200
Oblique, definition of	5
Reverse, definition of	7
Step, definition of	4
Tactics, special attention to be devoted to teaching	198
Unit, infantry	12
Flags, signallers, not carried at ceremonial	216
" signals in the field by	175
Flam, definition of	4
Flank, definition of	4
" directing, normal; rules for	125, 136, 183
Formation—	
Battalion, drill	155
" for ceremonial	227
" movements in the field	168
Body of troops larger than a division, ceremonial	248
Brigade, ceremonial	240
Company drill	135
" movements in the field	152
Division, ceremonial	245

Formation—contd.

	PAGE
— Guards, trooping the colour	265
— Marching, the normal	183
— Mass, not to be used near battlefield	154
— Patrols, leaders duty in	209
— Platoon, drill	124
— Platoon, movements in the field	133
— Square, position of machine guns	169
— Tactical, responsibility for	179
— Unit of, definition	4
Forming up a platoon	128
Forward slope, definition of	4
Frontage—	
— Battalion at war establishment	168
— Battalion, deployed square formation	180
— Definition of	4
Front, definition of	4
Funeral, military, saluting of body	113
Funeral, rifle exercises for	282 <i>et seq.</i>
Furlough, periods to be arranged during individual training	29

G.**Games—**

— Organization of	43
— Value of in physical training	24

Ground—

— Scouts, definition of	4
— Inspection or review, marking of	220
— Tactics; important part in	16
— Training in the use of	200, 202 <i>et seq.</i>

Guards—

— Complete units or portions, to furnish	14
— Compliments by, method of returning	188
— Compliments by, when on the march, to H.M. the King and Queen	253
— Compliments not paid by during certain periods	253
— Inspection of when mounted, procedure	255
— Mounting of, paying compliments during	255
— Formation; trooping the colour	265
— Honour, of; strength and formation	260, 262

Guards—contd.

	PAGE
— Inspection of by an officer, procedure	253
— Password, procedure when in use	259
— Relieving, posting and dismissing, procedure	253 <i>et seq.</i>
— Rounds, receiving by	259
— Turning in, procedure	252
— Turning out at night to rounds	259
— Turning out, occasions for... ..	253
— Turning out, procedure	252
Guides—	
— Company, detail of	136
— Platoon, details of	125

H.**Halts—**

— Cover necessary during ; when in the open	203
— Cross roads and junctions to be left clear	185
— During marching, particulars of	185
— Patrol, protection during	209
— Sanitary arrangements during	189
— Transport and horses, on the march	187
— Whistle signal for	185

Headquarter wing—

— Ceremonial, marching past... ..	230, 243
— Ceremonial, personnel of, position on parade	218
— Movement, warfare against uncivilized enemy	169
— Organization and command of	11
— Position, normal, in mass	156
— Training of	34
Hearing, training in for night work	211
Health, preservation of ; importance of sanitation	29
Horses, off saddling during halts	187

I.

Increase, drill movement, definition of	5
--	---

Individual training—

— Aim of	30
— Collective training depending upon	29
— Not to be limited to periods allotted	28

Individual training—contd.

PAGE

— Object of	28
— Recruit's course, detail of	21 <i>et seq.</i>
— Scouts, training of during	205
— Syllabus, general outline of	30 <i>et seq.</i>

Information—

— Negative, nature and value of	208
— Patrols, sending back of	208

Initiative—

— Section commanders, vital importance of	192
— Subordinate commanders, development of	17
— Subordinate leaders, demand for	14

Inspection—

— Battalion, detail of... ..	228 <i>et seq.</i>
— Brigade, detail of	241 <i>et seq.</i>
— Ground, marking of	220 <i>et seq.</i>
— Guard of Honour, conduct of	262
— Guards when mounted, by an officer, procedure	255
— Line, detail of	220
— Mens' feet after marching	186
— Opening and closing ranks, method	51
— Piquets, by an officer, procedure	255
— Platoon commander before marching, points	184
— Platoon, method	128

Instruction—

— Main channels of, the eye and ear	39
— Method of giving	39, 40
— Recruit's, method of giving	46

Instructions—

— General	9 <i>et seq.</i>
— Issue of in place of orders or words of command	133, 152, 155
— Schemes, preparation and execution of	195 <i>et seq.</i>

Instructors—

— Inspection by, training of in methods	51
— Recruits; equipment to be worn on parade	26
— Recruit, selection of and qualifications for	23
— Recruit, training of	21
— Training of during individual training periods	28
— Turn-out, to be an example	51

Inter-communication—

— Battle ; training of orderlies	...	...	...	...	293	<i>et seq.</i>
— Night ; training in	...	...	...	...	...	214
Interval, definition of	...	...	...	...	...	5

L

Latrines, on the march, arrangements	189
Leaders, training in field operations	...	...	...	...	191	<i>et seq.</i>

Leadership—

— Notes on	...	...	...	...	...	44, 45
— Section commander, vital importance of powers of	...	...	...	...	...	192
Leave, periods to be arranged during individual training	...	...	...	...	...	29
Lewis gun ranges, terms of	...	...	...	...	...	7
Liaison, definition of	...	...	...	...	...	5
Liaison, close, importance of appreciation of	...	...	...	...	...	16
Light automatic instruction for recruits	...	...	...	...	...	22
Line, definition of	...	...	...	...	...	5
Lining of streets, ceremonial	...	...	...	...	...	262 <i>et seq.</i>

M**Machine guns—**

— Detachments, period for training	...	...	...	...	...	33
— Marching past, brigade ceremonial	...	...	...	...	...	243
— Platoon, marching past	...	...	...	...	...	231
— Platoons, training of	...	...	...	...	...	34
— Position of when square is formed	...	...	...	...	...	167

March discipline—

— Ceremonial of war, the	...	...	...	...	...	184
— Development of, conditions for	...	...	...	...	...	183
— Esprit de corps, reflected by good	...	...	...	...	...	42
— Horsed and pack transport	...	...	...	...	...	186 <i>et seq.</i>
— Instructions, general	...	...	...	...	...	183 <i>et seq.</i>
— Practice, during field training	...	...	...	...	...	195

Marching—

— Ceremonial, length of pace and time	...	...	...	...	...	245
— Compliments paid during	...	...	...	...	187 <i>et seq.</i>	253
— Drum and pace stick, use of in	...	...	...	...	...	57
— Falling out, written permission necessary	...	...	...	...	...	186
— Formation, the normal	...	...	...	...	...	183

Marching—contd.**PAGE**

— Halts, during, particulars of	...	...	...	...	185
— Inspection of mens' feet, socks and boots before	...	...	...	...	184
— Length of pace and time in	...	...	...	...	56
— Order, for field exercises	...	...	...	...	198
— Position of soldier in, points of importance	...	...	...	...	57
— Reliefs, formations for	...	...	...	...	258
— Rifle regiments, rate of	...	...	...	...	57
— Rules to be observed when	...	...	...	...	184 <i>et seq.</i>
— Singing, use of organized when	...	...	...	...	186
— Test for good	...	...	...	...	78
— Training in	...	...	...	...	211

Marching past—

— Ceremonial after trooping the colour	...	...	...	...	275
— Battalion	...	...	...	...	229, 230
— Battalion, posts of officers...	...	...	...	...	229, 230
— Brigade	...	...	...	...	242
— Company	...	...	...	...	224
— Division	...	...	...	...	246
— Guard of Honour, formation	...	...	...	...	261
— Headquarter wing	...	...	...	...	230, 243
— Marching-gun platoon	...	...	...	...	231
— Officers saluting with the hand	...	...	...	...	222
— Transport; battalion ceremonial	...	...	...	...	231
Markers, method of employment and use of	...	...	...	...	218, 263
Marking points for ceremonial parades	...	...	...	...	218
Mass, not a tactical formation	...	...	...	...	154
Mass, various, definitions of	...	...	...	...	5

Messages—

— Method of delivering to an officer	...	...	...	...	116, 120
— Verbal, training in passing at night	...	...	...	...	214
— Verbal transmission of, accuracy essential	...	...	...	...	204

Militia—

— Annual training of units	...	...	...	...	30
— Recruit training, general lines	...	...	...	...	20
Models, sand, use of in field training	...	...	...	...	191

Morale—

— Development of, as the first object in training	...	...	...	...	15
— Maintenance of by discipline	...	...	...	...	14

Mounted officers—

PAGE

— Duties of, on the march	186
— Saluting at the halt and on the move	121, 123
— Swords, carrying of	222
Movement, control of by signals	173 <i>et seq.</i> 178

N.

National Anthem, saluting during playing	113, 251
Night firing, training in	213
Night operations, training in	211 <i>et seq.</i>

Non-commissioned officers—

— Charges against to be fully examined, importance of	20
— Fitness for duties of next higher rank ; aim in... ..	16
— Junior, authority ; depending upon support given	19
— Transfer of, condition for	13

O.

Oblique fire, definition of	5
Observing, principal points a scout must know	206 <i>et seq.</i>
Observing, training all ranks in	205

Officers—

— Attachment to other arms	16
— Battalion, marching past, posts of	229, 230
— Battalion, position on ceremonial parades	216, 217, 227
— Ceremonial, instructions	222
— Ceremonial, not marching past, position on parade	248
— Company, position of at trooping the colour	266
— Compliments by, when in command of a party... ..	188
— Delivery of messages to, method	116, 120
— Fitness for duties of next higher rank ; aim in... ..	16
— Guards of Honour, position with	261, 262
— Marching past, saluting with the hand	222
— Mounted on the march, general duties of	186
— Position of on the march and when near the battlefield	190
— Saluting by soldier, instructions for	112 <i>et seq.</i>
— Saluting, with the hand instructions for... ..	112
— Staff, ceremonial ; drawing swords	238
— Swords, drawing and carrying of... ..	222
— Training, general division of	20
— Trooping the colour, positions of... ..	265

	PAGE
Order of march—	
— Royal Review	250
— Staff, divisional, at inspection	248
— Staff, inspection of a larger body than a division	249
Orderlies—	
— Training of, for inter-communication	203 <i>et seq.</i>
— Training of, for night work	214
Orderly, definition of	8
Organization—	
— Battalion, detail of	10
— Company, detail of	11
— Headquarter wing, detail	11
— Infantry, basis of	10
— Maintenance of ; a guarantee of esprit de corps	42
— Maintenance of, rules for	12 <i>et seq.</i>
— Maintenance of, the first duty of commanders	12
— Platoon, detail of	11
— Regimental depot ; for recruit training	20
— Section, detail of	12
— Variations permissible for ceremonial only	215
Orientation, training in at night-work	213

P.

Pace, length of in marching	58
Pace stick, use of in marching	57
Parados, definition of	6
Parapet, definition of	6
Password, delivery of to the guard, procedure	259
Patrols—	
— Definitions of	6
— Fighting, command of	210
— Halts by, protection for	209
— Reconnoitring, training of... ..	210
— Training in conduct and duty of	208 <i>et seq.</i>
— Use of	204
Platoon—	
— Compliments on the march, method of paying	188
— Dressing of, methods	126
— Drill	124 <i>et seq.</i>

Platoon—*contd.*

	PAGE
— Extended order movements	130 <i>et seq.</i>
— Formations for drill	124
— Formations in the field	133
— Inspection of, method	128
— Maintenance of identity	13
— Numbering of, method	12
— Organization and command of	11
— Proving of	128
— Serjeant, position, normal, drill parades...	124

Platoon commander—

— Ceremonial parade, position of	216, 217
— Guardian of platoon, general duties affecting	43
— Inspection by before marching, points for	184
— Organization of games by	43
— Position, normal, on drill parades	124
— Supervision of the work of his section commanders	39
— Syllabus for field training of	193
— Tactical formation, responsibility for	179
— Teaching, notes on for the guidance of	37 <i>et seq.</i>
— Training of in field operations	192
— Training of in fire and movement, particulars of	201
— Training of, responsibility for	18
— Training their platoons, importance of	29
— Training responsibilities, important	19
— Transfer of, conditions governing	13
— Understudy, training of	14, 18

Platoon training—

— Backward men not to delay progress of	38
— Field operations, nature of	194
— Programme for, preparation of	33
— Presentation of colours, general instructions	278 <i>et seq.</i>
— Pride of regiment, method of fostering	43

Programmes—

— Annual training, framing of by commanders	28
— Recruit training, framing of	24
— Section and platoon training, preparation of	33
— Training, preparation of, general notes	38
Physical fitness, notes on	43
Physical fitness of recruits before posting to a battalion	25

Physical training—

	PAGE
— Games and sports, value regarding	24
— Recruit, object of and methods adopted	23 <i>et seq.</i>
Piquet, inspection of by an officer	255
Pivot flank, definition of	6
Post cossack, definition of	2
Property, personal, casualties, disposal of	44

R.

Ranges, rifle, and Lewis gun, definitions of	7
Range-takers, period for training	33
Rank (formation), definition of	7
Reconnaissance, definition of	7
Reconnoitring by all ranks, training in	205
Reconnoitring patrols, training of	210

Recruit training—

— Additional period at depot, conditions for	25
— Course, normal period for	24, 25
— Dismissal from ; standard of efficiency for	26
— General arrangement of work	24
— General particulars of system	20 <i>et seq.</i>
— Regulars, completion of at depot or with battalion	26
— Saluting instructions, during	112
— Time, number of paces in marching	56
— Training in marching, during	211
Recruits, standard of efficiency for posting to battalion	25, 26
Regimental depot, organization for training recruits	20
Reliefs, marching of, formations	258
Report centre, definition of	7
Reporting, training all ranks in	205
Reverse fire, definition of	7
Revet, definition of	7

Review—

— Battalion	227 <i>et seq.</i>
— Body of troops, larger than a division	248
— Brigade, general instructions	240 <i>et seq.</i>
— Colours, carrying of	226
— Division	245 <i>et seq.</i>

Review—contd.

	PAGE
— Ground, marking of	220
— Royal, order of march	250
Riding on transport vehicles, no man allowed	186
Rifle—	
— Exercises, details of	83
— Exercises, for funeral ceremonial	282 <i>et seq.</i>
— Instruction for recruits; detail	22
— Issue of to recruits	26
— Ranges, terms applied to in classification	7
— Signals by, methods of giving	175
Road space, method to avoid loss of	184
Rounds, receiving of by guards	259
Royal naval warrant ranks, saluting of	113
Royal review, order of march	250

S.**Salute—**

— Officers, with arms	120
— Officers, without arms	112
— Sentries	120
— Soldier, addressing an officer	116
— Soldier, driving a horsed vehicle	117
— Soldier, passing an officer	116
— Soldier, riding a bicycle	117
— Soldier, riding a horse	117
— Soldier, riding a horse in a team, with the whip	117
— Soldier, riding on a vehicle	117
— Soldier, riding or driving a motor vehicle	117
— Soldier, sitting, when officers pass	116
— Soldier, with the rifle	118 <i>et seq.</i>
— Soldier, without a cap	116

Saluting—

— Base, length of, on inspection ground	221
— Cane, when carrying	114
— Colours and standards when uncased	113
— Commander of parties	113
— Company in line	224
— Funeral, military	113
— General instructions	112 <i>et seq.</i>

	PAGE
Saluting—contd.	
— Hand, how given	112
— Instructions, general	112 <i>et seq.</i>
— National Anthem, during playing of	113, 251
— Officers, instructions for	112 <i>et seq.</i>
— Officers marching past, swords not drawn	222
— Royal naval warrant ranks	113
— Swords on ceremonial parades by officers	120 <i>et seq.</i>
— Their Majesties The King and Queen, by troops	187
— With arms, soldiers, instructions	118 <i>et seq.</i>
— Without arms, soldiers, instructions	114 <i>et seq.</i>
Sand models, use of in field training	191
Sanitation—	
— On the march, general	189
— Training, importance of to be emphasized	29
Scouts—	
— Duty and employment of	204
— Ground, definition of	4
— Qualifications necessary for	206
— Training of	205 <i>et seq.</i>
— Training of, syllabus	206 <i>et seq.</i>
Section—	
— Basis of infantry organization	10
— Infantry fire unit	12
— Maintenance of identity	12
— Numbering of, method	12
— Strength of, varying	13
— Trench, definition of	7
Section commander—	
— Command, opportunities to be given for	19
— Falling out to care for sick men, not allowed	186
— Initiative and leadership, vital importance of	192
— Responsibility; the most definite	19
— Selection of, important considerations	19
— Syllabus of field training for	192
— Tactical formation, responsibility for	179
— Training of in field operations	192
— Training of in fire and movement, particulars of	201
— Training of, importance	13
— Training of, responsibility for	18
— Understudy, training of	14, 18

Section training—

— Field operations, nature of	194
— Programme for, preparation of	33

Sentries—

— Challenging by, procedure	258 <i>et seq.</i>
— Compliments by, method of returning	188
— Compliments, paying of, by	253
— Conduct of when on their beat	257
— Relieving and posting, procedure... ..	256
— Trooping the colour, conduct of	265
Schemes, instructions for	195 <i>et seq.</i>
Screens, umpire, use of in field training	192
Signallers not to carry flags on ceremonial parades	216
Signallers, period for training	33

Signals—

— Arm, methods of giving by	173 <i>et seq.</i>
— Company commander to practise command by... ..	136
— Control by, necessity for in the field	173, 178
— Field, use of... ..	173 <i>et seq.</i> , 178
— Flags, method of giving by	175
— Rifle, methods of giving by	175
— Whistle, use of for	173, 176
Singing, organized, use of on the march	186
Single file, definition of	7
Sizing a company, ceremonial	223
Slope, forward, definition of	4
Smoke grenades, use of to assist movements	201
Socks, mens', inspection of before marching	184

Squad—

— Definition of	7
— Drill, general instructions	46 <i>et seq.</i>
— Drill, with arms	83 <i>et seq.</i>
— Drill, without arms... ..	51 <i>et seq.</i>
— Formation and strength of for instruction	23

Staff—

— Brigade, falling out after saluting, marching past	242
— Divisional, position on ceremonial parades	245, 247, 248
— Officers, drawing swords	238
— Officers, saluting	247
Standards, saluting of when uncased	131

	PAGE
Step, fire, definition of	4
Street lining, general instructions	262 <i>et seq.</i>
Sump, definition of	7
Supernumeraries—	
— Definition of	8
— Passing through the ranks	126
— Position of on parade	125, 127, 135
— Positions, gaining of when changing ranks	140
Supplementary Reserve—	
— Annual training of units	30
— Recruit training, general lines	20 <i>et seq.</i>
Swords—	
— Drawing of by officers	222
— Exercises, dismounted and mounted	290 <i>et seq.</i>
— Mounted officers', carrying of	222
— Officers' carrying of	222
— Saluting with by officers	120 <i>et seq.</i>
— Staff officers, drawing of	233
T.	
Tactics—	
— Fire, special attention to be devoted to teaching	193
— Ground, importance of	16
— Infantry unit, basis of	12
Tactical—	
— Exercises, as a drill, general remarks	194
— Formation, responsibility for	179
— Knowledge, need of by all ranks	14
— Training, elementary, for the recruit	22 <i>et seq.</i>
Tanks, representation of by limbers or carts	200
Teaching, notes on for commanders	37 <i>et seq.</i>
Telling off a company, ceremonial	224
Telling off a platoon	123
Territorial Army—	
— Annual training of units	30
— Field exercises, dress for	199
— Recruit training, general lines	20 <i>et seq.</i>

	PAGE
Time, number of paces, in marching ...	56
Trades, facilities to be given for learning ...	27
Trainer, good ; qualifications essential ...	37

Training—

— Aim of ...	1, 35
— Annual, particulars and considerations of ...	28 <i>et seq.</i>
— Army, first object to be attained ...	15
— Battalion, period for ...	35
— Battle drill to be constantly practised during ...	178
— Cadre at depots, duties of ...	20, 21
— Commander's responsibility ...	17 <i>et seq.</i>
— Company, period for ...	34
— Co-operation of other arms during field ...	200
— Discipline, the bed rock of ...	14
— Discipline to be maintained during, standard of ...	195
— Duties in billets, camps and bivouacs ...	210
— Educational, commencement of ...	27
— Entrenching at night ...	214
— Field, division of ...	191
— Field engineering during field operations ...	210
— Field, exemptions to ...	34
— Field operations, period for allotment of ...	34
— Fire and movement, in the importance of ...	200
— Ground, methods in the use of ...	202 <i>et seq.</i>
— Headquarter wing ...	34
— Individual, aim and outline of ...	30 <i>et seq.</i>
— Instructors in methods of inspection ...	51
— Machine-gun platoons, arrangements for ...	34
— Machine gunners, period for ...	33
— Marching, general ; recruit and trained man ...	211
— Methods to be effective, essentials for ...	37
— Night operations, general considerations ...	211 <i>et seq.</i>
— Notes on and aim of ...	35 <i>et seq.</i>
— Objects of ...	15
— Officer and soldier, general division of ...	20
— Orderlies for inter-communication ...	203 <i>et seq.</i>
— Orderlies, night work ...	214
— Orientation, methods for night use ...	213
— Patrols, conduct and duty of ...	208 <i>et seq.</i>

Training—*contd.*

	PAGE
— Physical, recruit	23, 24
— Platoon, period for allotment of	33
— Principles to be adhered to	10
— Programmes, general notes on the preparation of	38
— Range-takers, period for	33
— Reconnoitring, observing and reporting, all ranks	205
— Reconnoitring patrols	210
— Recruit, particulars of	20 <i>et seq.</i>
— Role of other arms in battle ; relationship between	15
— Scouts and patrols	204 <i>et seq.</i>
— Scouts, syllabus of	206
— Section, period for, allotment of	33
— Self-discipline in the men ; success in	184
— Signallers, period for	33
— Tactical, elementary, recruit	22 <i>et seq.</i>
— Transport drivers, period for	33
— Unit, principal in the battalion	18
— Weapon, annual course of ; period for	34

Transport—

— Brakesman, position of on the march	187
— Drivers, period for training	33
— Halts during marching	187
— On the march, to be kept closed up	186
— Regimental, brigade ceremonial	243
— Regimental, marching past	231
— Vehicles, no man allowed to ride on	186
— Traverse, definition of	8
— Trooping the colour, general instructions	264 <i>et seq.</i>
— Troops, divisional, provision of band, at ceremonial	247
— Turn-out, clean and smart, to be insisted upon	51

U.**Unit—**

— Fire, infantry	12
— Infantry, basis for tactics	12
— Training, principal in the battalion	18
— Umpire screens, use of	198
— Umpires, mounted, duties of at field training exercises	198



















V.




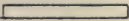
	PAGE
Verbal messages, accuracy in transmission necessity for	204
Verbal message, passing of at night, training	214
Vehicle, motor, salute by driver	117
Vehicle, salute by soldier riding on	117
Vehicles, transport, riding on	186
Visual training at night	212

W.

Warfare, uncivilized enemy ; movements applicable	168
Water, during marches, arrangements	189
Water-bottles, inspection of	184
Weapon training, annual course, period for	34
Wheeling, definition of	8
Whip, salute by driver when riding or driving	117
Whistle—	
—— Signal to halt and start, use of	185
—— Signals for attention and march at ease to be arranged	189
—— Use of in controlling movement	173, 176
Words of command, method of giving	47 <i>et seq.</i>
Words of command, timing of	49
Working parties—	
—— Complete units, or portions, to be detailed	14
—— Discipline, to be enforced at all times	184
—— Esprit de corps guarantees good work	43

KEY TO PLATES.

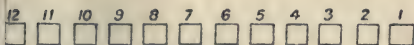
	<i>Commanding Officer.</i>		<i>Company Serjeant-Major.</i>
	<i>Second-in-Command.</i>		<i>Company Qr.-Mr.-Serjeant.</i>
	<i>Adjutant</i>		<i>Platoon Serjeant.</i>
	<i>Company Commander.</i>		<i>Other N.C.O's</i>
	<i>Company Second-in-Command.</i>		<i>Section Commander.</i>
	<i>Platoon Commander.</i>		<i>Bandmaster.</i>
	<i>Other Officers.</i>		<i>Serjeant Drummer (Bugler or Piper.)</i>
	<i>Regimental Serjeant-Major.</i>		<i>Drummer (Orderly)</i>
	<i>Regimental Quarter-master-Serjeant.</i>		<i>Other ranks.</i>


 *Front rank.*
 or

 *Rear rank.*

The figures indicating intervals and distances represent paces

List of names of persons who have been			
admitted to the membership of the			
Society of Friends, since the year 1800			
Year	Name	Age	Sex
1800	John Smith	25	Male
1801	Mary Jones	20	Female
1802	William Brown	22	Male
1803	Elizabeth White	18	Female
1804	James Green	24	Male
1805	Ann Black	19	Female
1806	Robert Grey	21	Male
1807	Sarah Hall	17	Female
1808	Thomas King	23	Male
1809	Rebecca Lee	16	Female
1810	George Young	26	Male
1811	Fanny Adams	15	Female
1812	Henry Baker	27	Male
1813	Margaret Clark	14	Female
1814	Samuel Evans	28	Male
1815	Charlotte Foster	13	Female
1816	David Harris	29	Male
1817	Emily Martin	12	Female
1818	Joseph Nelson	30	Male
1819	Isabella Phillips	11	Female
1820	Samuel Roberts	31	Male
1821	Ann Taylor	10	Female
1822	John Walker	32	Male
1823	Mary Young	9	Female
1824	William Zane	33	Male
1825	Elizabeth Allen	8	Female
1826	James Wright	34	Male
1827	Ann King	7	Female
1828	Robert Lee	35	Male
1829	Sarah Green	6	Female
1830	Thomas White	36	Male
1831	Rebecca Brown	5	Female
1832	George Black	37	Male
1833	Fanny Grey	4	Female
1834	Henry Hall	38	Male
1835	Margaret King	3	Female
1836	Samuel Lee	39	Male
1837	Charlotte Martin	2	Female
1838	David Nelson	40	Male
1839	Emily Phillips	1	Female
1840	Samuel Roberts	41	Male
1841	Ann Taylor	42	Female
1842	John Walker	43	Male
1843	Mary Young	44	Female
1844	William Zane	45	Male
1845	Elizabeth Allen	46	Female
1846	James Wright	47	Male
1847	Ann King	48	Female
1848	Robert Lee	49	Male
1849	Sarah Green	50	Female
1850	Thomas White	51	Male
1851	Rebecca Brown	52	Female
1852	George Black	53	Male
1853	Fanny Grey	54	Female
1854	Henry Hall	55	Male
1855	Margaret King	56	Female
1856	Samuel Lee	57	Male
1857	Charlotte Martin	58	Female
1858	David Nelson	59	Male
1859	Emily Phillips	60	Female
1860	Samuel Roberts	61	Male
1861	Ann Taylor	62	Female
1862	John Walker	63	Male
1863	Mary Young	64	Female
1864	William Zane	65	Male
1865	Elizabeth Allen	66	Female
1866	James Wright	67	Male
1867	Ann King	68	Female
1868	Robert Lee	69	Male
1869	Sarah Green	70	Female
1870	Thomas White	71	Male
1871	Rebecca Brown	72	Female
1872	George Black	73	Male
1873	Fanny Grey	74	Female
1874	Henry Hall	75	Male
1875	Margaret King	76	Female
1876	Samuel Lee	77	Male
1877	Charlotte Martin	78	Female
1878	David Nelson	79	Male
1879	Emily Phillips	80	Female
1880	Samuel Roberts	81	Male
1881	Ann Taylor	82	Female
1882	John Walker	83	Male
1883	Mary Young	84	Female
1884	William Zane	85	Male
1885	Elizabeth Allen	86	Female
1886	James Wright	87	Male
1887	Ann King	88	Female
1888	Robert Lee	89	Male
1889	Sarah Green	90	Female
1890	Thomas White	91	Male
1891	Rebecca Brown	92	Female
1892	George Black	93	Male
1893	Fanny Grey	94	Female
1894	Henry Hall	95	Male
1895	Margaret King	96	Female
1896	Samuel Lee	97	Male
1897	Charlotte Martin	98	Female
1898	David Nelson	99	Male
1899	Emily Phillips	100	Female

1.
NAL MARCH



After movement



movement

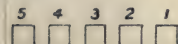


FIG.3.

FORMING SQUAD.

On the Left. Form - Squad.

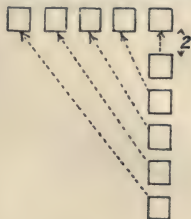






Fig. 3.

Squad with a Blank even file.

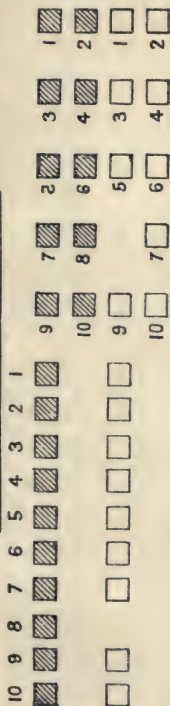


PLATE IV.
THE ORDER.

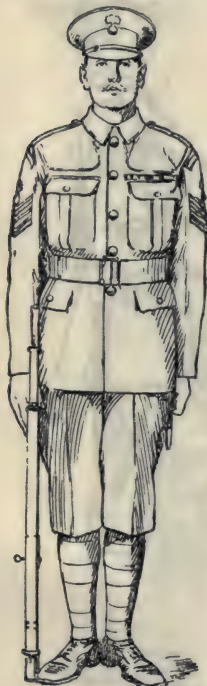


PLATE V.—THE SLOPE.



PLATE VI.
THE PRESENT.



PLATE VII.

FIXING BAYONETS (AT "TWO"), REAR RANK.



PLATE VIII.
UNFIXING BAYONETS (AT "ONE").



PLATE IX.
THE TRAIL.



PLATE X.
THE SECURE



PLATE XI.
THE RECOVER.



PLATE XII.
SALUTING TO THE FRONT.

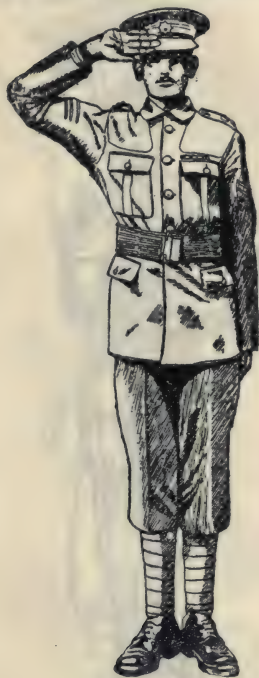


PLATE XIII.

THE SALUTE WITH THE RIFLE AT THE SLOPE.



PLATE XIV.

THE SLOPE.



PLATE XV.
THE CARRY.

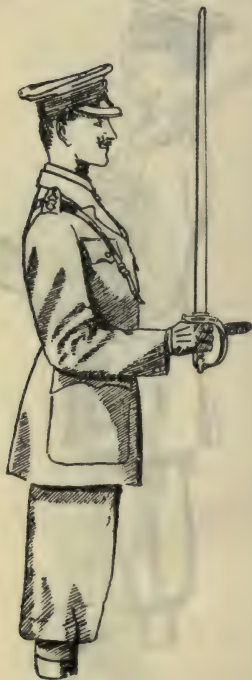


PLATE XVI.
POSITION OF RECOVER (FRONT VIEW).



PLATE XVII.

THE SALUTE—2ND MOTION (FRONT VIEW).

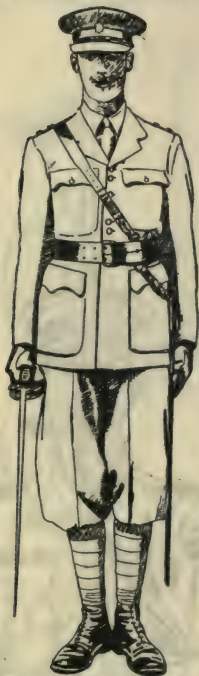


PLATE XVIII.

THE SALUTE—2ND MOTION (SIDE VIEW).

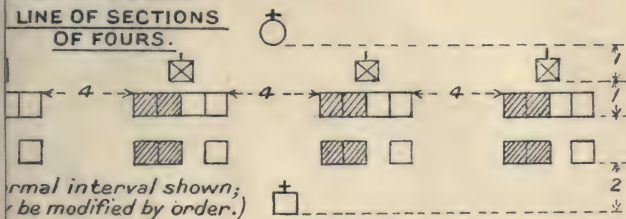


THE
JOURNAL OF THE
ROYAL ANTHROPOLOGICAL INSTITUTE
OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND
VOLUME 100 PART 1 2000



FORMATIONS.

LINE OF SECTIONS OF FOURS.



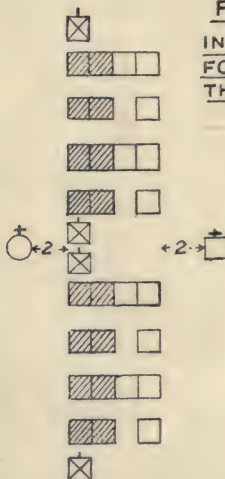
normal interval shown;
(be modified by order.)

FIG. 4.

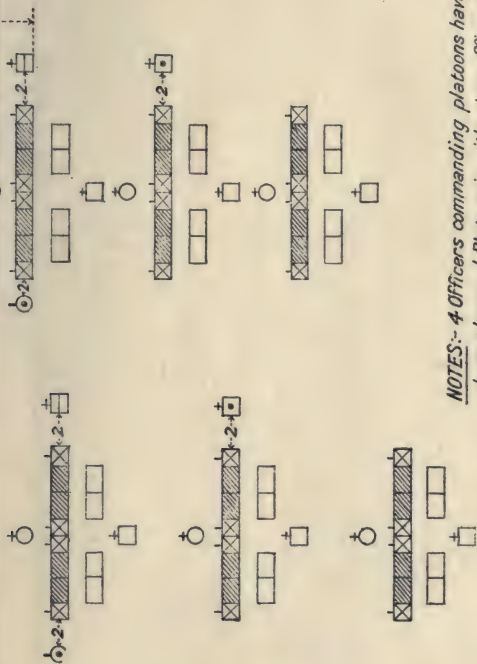
IN FILE.-
BY THE
LEFT.

FIG. 5.

IN COLN. OF
FOURS.- BY
THE LEFT.

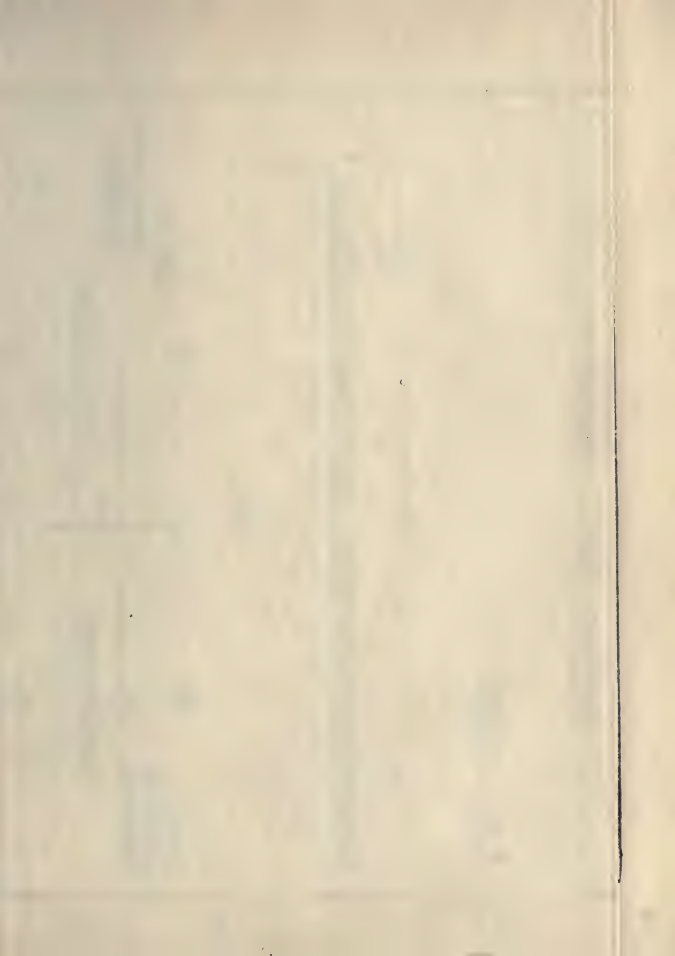


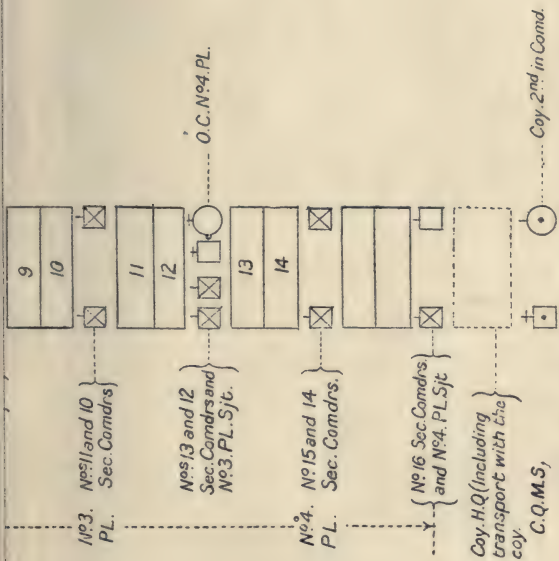




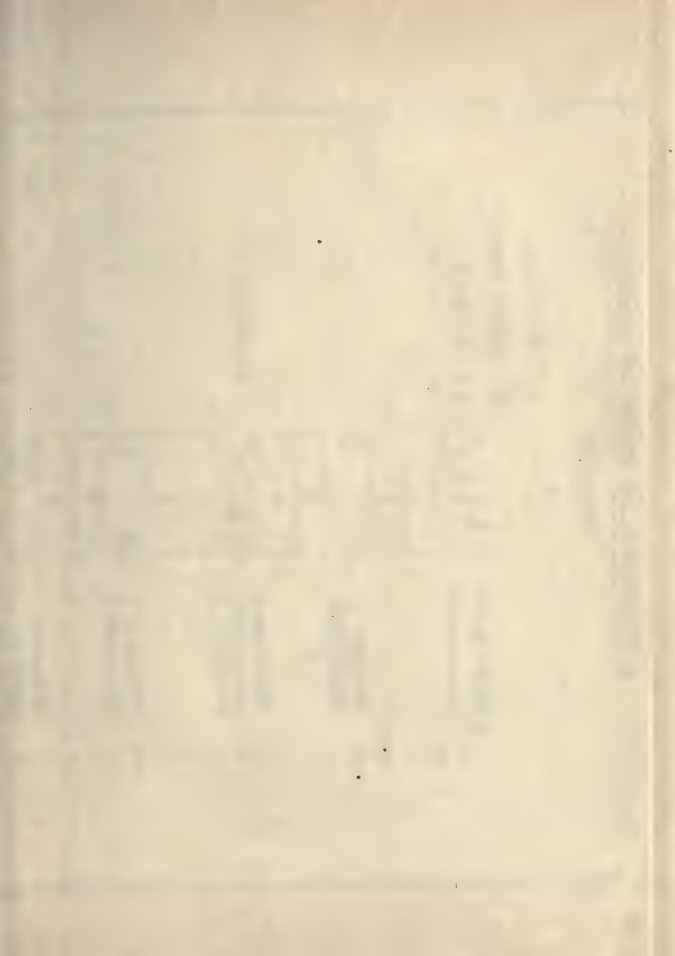
NOTES: 4 Officers commanding platoons have been shown; 1 Platoon is without an officer at Peace Establishment.

If the Coy. H.Q. is present it will be formed up in rear of the centre of each company formation and the company second-in-command will take post in rear of it.

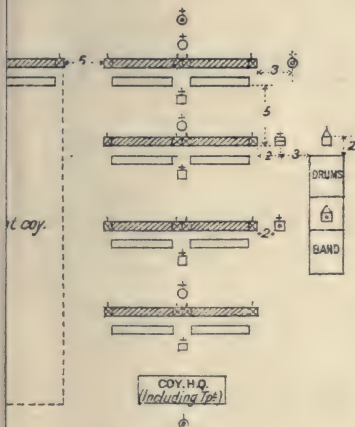




NOTE At Peace Est. the Coy. H.Q. will include any transport allotted from the headquarter wing and such personnel as is laid down



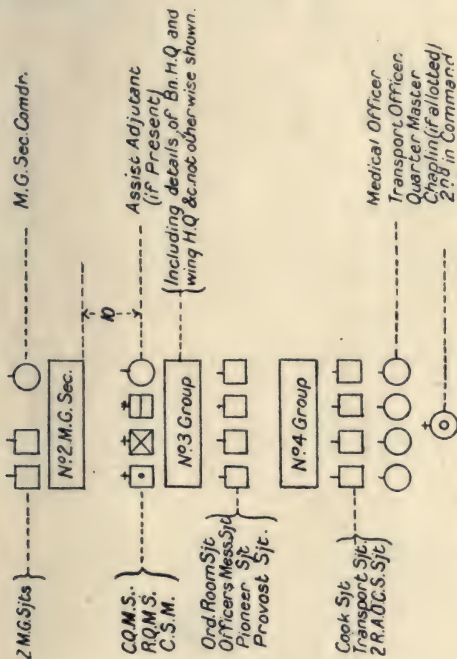
(PEACE EST.)



1st coy.

N°1 Group.

NOTE:- At War Est. the above details will be adhered to as far as they are applicable.



NOTE At Peace Est. the above details will be adhered to as far as applicable.

The Band following the drums (bugles or pipes) will take post in the column as ordered by the battalion commander. The sergeant instructor in musketry will take the place of the assistant adjutant.

NG FROM COLN.OF ROUTE.

TO THE LEFT."

Formation after
Signal (SQUARE)

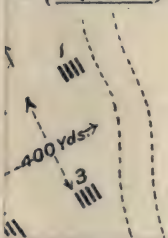
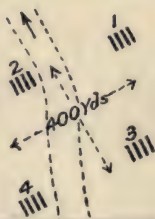


FIG. 3.

Signal.— "DEPLOY TO THE RIGHT."

Formation before
Signal.

Formation after
Signal (SQUARE)



- Notes:- 1. When deployment is made from a road and it is desired that all companies, &c. shall move clear of the road subsequent to deployment, the battalion &c., commander will indicate the flank to which those companies &c., which would otherwise remain on the road must move in order to clear it; e.g. in Figs. 2, 3 and 4; all companies &c. are shown clear of the road.
2. In each case special instructions must be previously issued for the movement of the machine-gun platoon and transport.

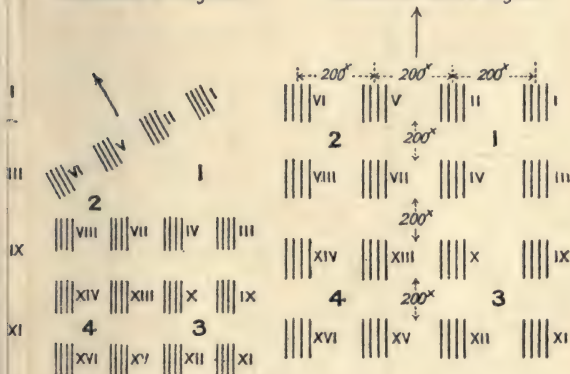
PLATOON COLUMNS.

FIG. 2.

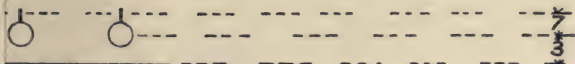
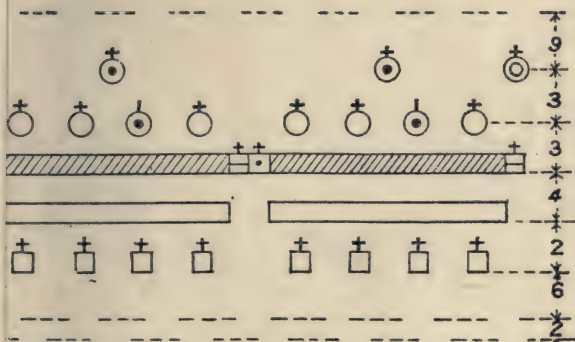
Signal: "Change direction_half left."

Movement in Progress.

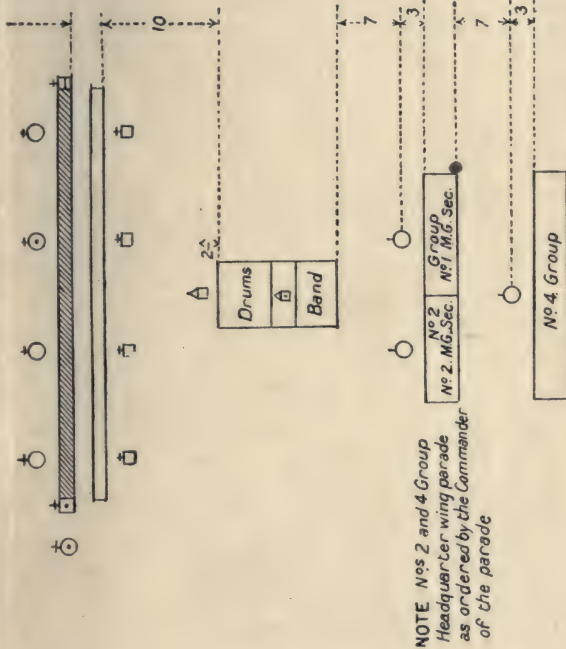
Formation before Signal.



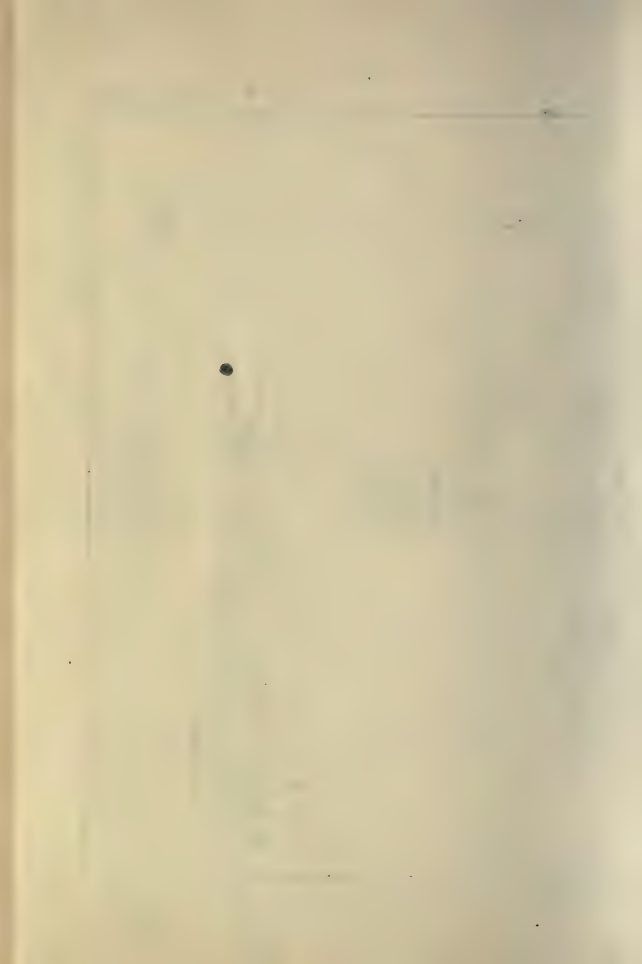
IN LINE. (PEACE EST.)



N^o 2 G^{rup} 2 sec. | N^o 3 sec.



For Key see Plate I.



HIRED A CAR

Cheaper than Owning One

“You Drive” HIRED SERVICE

For the period of your Leave hire a Brand new, latest model 6-cyl. BUICK 4-Door Saloon or 5-Seater Touring Car.

Write to us for Tariff and full particulars of our “You Drive” Hiring Service and ensure having a first-class Car on the very best terms—a Car you will be proud to be seen driving.

GODFREY DAVIS & Co.,
26, Albemarle Street,
LONDON, W.1.

'Phone :—Regent 7618-9.

Telegrams :—“Shomoto, Pacey, London.”

MILITARY BOOKS

Published by



Authority.

LONDON:

PRINTED UNDER THE AUTHORITY OF HIS MAJESTY'S STATIONERY OFFICE.

To be purchased directly from H.M. STATIONERY OFFICE at the following addresses:
Adastral House, Kingsway, London, W.C. 2; 28, Abingdon Street, London, S.W. 1;
York Street Manchester: 1, St. Andrew's Crescent, Cardiff;
or 120, George Street, Edinburgh;
or through any Bookseller.

Unless otherwise stated, books in the following list are obtainable by Officers, Non-Commissioned Officers and Men (in the manner prescribed by paragraph 649 of the Regulations for the Allowances of the Army 1924), at a discount of 25 per cent. off the prices quoted, postage being an additional charge (odd farthings should be counted as halfpennies). Applications should be made on Army Form L. 1372, and addressed to the Under-Secretary of State, The War Office, S.W. 1.

Abyssinia. Expedition to. 2 Vols. and Maps. 1870. Half Morocco, £5 5s., Cloth £4 4s.

Accounts. Army. See FINANCIAL INSTRUCTIONS.

Africa. Notes on the Geology of the Continent of. 3s.

Air Survey Committee. Report No. 1. 1923. 4s. 6d. Additional Bibliography. 2d.

Aldershot Command. Standing Orders for. 1925. 5s.

Allowances. Army. Regulations. Jan. 1924. 1s. 6d. Amendment. Feb. 1924. 1d. Dec. 1924. See also FIELD ALLOWANCE, PAY OF OFFICERS, and SEPARATION ALLOWANCE.

Amharic Language. Short Manual of the. With Vocabulary. 1910. 5s.

MILITARY BOOKS, published by Authority—continued.

- Ammunition for Q.F. 4.5-in. Howitzer.** Notes on. 4th Edition, 1920. (With Diagrams.) 1s.
- Animal Management.** 1923. Prepared in the Veterinary Department of the War Office. (Cloth.) 2s.
- Anti-Aircraft Defence.** (Part I. Ground Units.) Manual of. 1922 (Provisional). 1s.
- Armoured Car Training.** Training and War (Provisional) 1921. 1s. 6d.
Do. Amendments. Feb. 1923. 2d.
- Armourers. Instructions for:—**
Care, repair, browning, &c., of small arms, Machine Guns, "Parapet" Carriages, and for the care of Bicycles. 1912. (Reprinted, with Amendments, 1916.) 2s. 6d.
Addendum, Jan. 1918. Care and repair of Rifles, Magazine, .303-inch Pattern 1914. 1d.
Do. Aug. 1921. 1d.
- Army Entrance Regulations.** See ENTRANCE.
- Army Fire Service Regulations, 1924.** 2d.
- Army List. Monthly.** Officers on the Active List. (*Publication was suspended during the War*):—
Jan. 1919 and after. Each 5s.
Quarterly Supplement. Dec. 1921 to June 1922. Each 4s.
Half-yearly Supplement. Dec. 1922. 6s.
Do. June 1924. 5s.
Do. Dec. 1924. 5s.
Do. June 1925. 5s.
- Army List. Half-Yearly.** (*Not issued in October 1914.*) Each 15s.
Do. Supplement. Jan. 1925. 7s. 6d.
- Army Orders. Monthly.** Each 3d.
Do. Index for 1924. 6d.
- Army Orders. Covers for.** 9d.
- Army Review. Quarterly.** July 1911 to Oct. 1914. (Vol. I, Nos. 1 and 2, out of print.) 1s. (Up to July 1914, 1s.; Oct. 1914, 11d.)
(*Subsequent publication suspended.*)
- Army Service Corps.** See SERVICE.
- Artificers. Military. Handbook.** 10th Edition. 1915. 9d.
- Artillery at the Picardy Manœuvres in 1910.** Translated from the French. 2s. 6d.
- Artillery. Royal:—**
Instructions for Practice. Garrison (Coast Artillery) Seawards. June 1922. 3d.
Light, Medium and Heavy. Instructions for Practice. March 1924. 3d.
Rangetakers. See that item.
- Standing Orders for:—**
Lt.-Colonel's Command R.G.A. (Coast and Siege). 1d.
- Complete list can be obtained on application to H.M. Stationery Office.*



The Corporation of

Navy, Army & Air Force Institutes

is

**a Service Organization
trading not for profit.
It has no Shareholders
and pays no dividends,
but secures all surplus for the
benefit of its only customers**

THE SERVICES.

**The more you deal with your
own business, the more rebate will
be paid to Regimental Funds
and the more your comfort and
convenience will be increased.**

**Imperial Court,
Upper Kennington Lane,
London, S.E.11.**

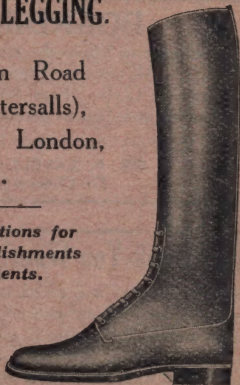
REGULATION BOOTS and LEGGINGS.

TOM HILL

**Inventor of the
REGULATION LEGGING.**

26, Brompton Road
(Opposite Tattersalls),
Knightsbridge, London,
S.W.1.

*Special quotations for
Military Establishments
and Regiments.*



IF YOU WISH TO "KEEP IN STEP"

with the March of Progress.

YOU WILL HAVE TO LEARN

SCRIPT SHORTHAND

some time.

WHY NOT "FALL IN" NOW?

The System will be found to be highly efficient for Clerical work either in His Majesty's Forces or in Civilian life. Fullest particulars with Specimen Lesson on application to

DEPT I.T.

SCRIPT SHORTHAND,

126, Chancery Lane, London, W.C.2.

BOARDING SCHOOLS

and Colleges in England—situated London, Country and Seaside districts. All classes—Preparatory, Finishing, Commercial, etc.—for Boys or Girls. Fees range from £40 to £200 yearly. Full particulars supplied to parents or guardians of pupils free.

Write your requirements fully, call, or 'phone, Holborn 6105.

MR. F. LAVELL BATTEN, School Agency,
27, Chancery Lane, London, W.C.2.

That Book You Want! Foyles can supply it. Special Department for Books on Military Science, Military History and allied subjects, containing many thousands of volumes, secondhand and new. Also over 1,000,000 vols. on every other conceivable subject, an immense number being now out-of-print. Send For Military Catalogue 603 (free) outlining requirements and interests; other suitable catalogues will then be included. Books sent on approval to any part of the world. **Books Purchased.**

FOYLES
121-125, Charing Cross
Rd., London, W.C.2.

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

UD
234
A57
1926
v.1

Great Britain. War Office
Infantry training

PA 501

